

Annual Report/Annual Accounts/ Quality Account 2018-19



Annual Report 2018-19





Contents

SECTION 1 - PERFORMANCE REPORT

1	Statement from the Chief Executive	5
1.1	Overview of the purpose and activities of the Trust	7
1.2	The Trust's objectives	8
1.3	Key issues and risks	12
1.5	Going Concern	12
2	Performance Analysis	13
2.1	Key performance measures	13
2.2	Performance in 2018/19	14
2.3	Financial performance	14
2.4	Collaboration and partnership working	15

SECTION 2 - ACCOUNTABILITY REPORT

3	Directors Report	17
3.1	The Board of Directors	17
3.2	Fit and Proper Persons Requirement (FPPR)	18
3.3	Statement on disclosure to auditors	18
4	Annual Governance Statement	20
4.1	Scope of responsibility	20
4.2	The purpose of the system of internal control	20
4.3	Capacity to handle risk	20
4.4	The risk and control framework	21
4.5	Review of economy, efficiency and effectiveness and use of resources	33
4.6	Information Governance	33
4.7	Annual Quality Account	34
4.8	Review of effectiveness	36
4.9	Conclusion	36

SECTION 3 - REMUNERATION AND STAFF REPORT

5	The Trust's approach to its workforce and staffing	39
5.1	Trust employees	39
5.2	Payments for staff and services	41
6	Fair Pay Disclosure	42
7	Financial Statements	
	Attachment 1 – Pay Multiplier	43
	Attachment 2 – Director's Remuneration Report	44
	Attachment 3 – Pension Benefits	46

Section 1

Performance Report

This section provides the reader with information on the organisation, its purpose, how it has performed in 2018/19, and the key risks to the achievements of its objectives.

1. Statement from the Chief Executive

2018/19 was another challenging year for the NHS as a whole and for the health and care sector locally, and yet despite this, there were many successes for the Trust.

The Trust's vision is to deliver 5 Star Patient Care by providing high quality health services and an excellent patient experience. The following bullet points highlight some of the exceptional achievements of the Trust and its staff:

- The Trust was rated as outstanding by the CQC, following an inspection in the summer of 2018
- The annual NHS Staff Survey results were once again very positive, with the Trust rated by staff as the best place to work and receive treatment in the NHS.
- The Trust is also, for the third year running, the top acute Trust in the entire country for staff engagement, staff motivation, and pride in the quality of care provided to patients
- The Trust achieved the highest staff flu vaccination rate of any NHS provider organisation at 95.4%
- Patients received above 99.1% new harm-free care (NHS Safety Thermometer)
- There was a 22% reduction in falls resulting in severe harm, compared to 2017/18 (18 compared to 22 in 2017/18)
- Reduced the number of Clostridium Difficile infections, performing significantly better than the threshold set by NHS Improvement (13 reported compared to the threshold of 40)
- The Trust was able to sustain an overall registered nurse fill rate (a measure of safe staffing) of 96.5% for the year despite the national recruitment and retention challenges for nursing staff
- The Patient Led Assessments of the Care Environment (PLACE) programme ranked the Trust as the best Acute NHS Trust in England for the second year running. Scoring an average of 99%, the Trust achieved top marks in the country for cleanliness, food, privacy and dignity, condition of the buildings and facilities for patients living with dementia and patients with disabilities. The Trust was the only Acute Trust in the country to score 100% for its facilities for patients with disability and the condition of its buildings.
- 94.7% of inpatients would recommend our services, as recorded by the Friends and Family Test
- Performance in the Sentinel Stroke National Audit Programme was excellent, and 85.7% of stroke patients spent at least 90% of their hospital stay on a stroke unit, against a national target of 83%
- Sustained achievement of referral to treatment (RTT) pathway waiting times with 92.4% of pathways completed within 18 weeks
- The Trust continued to meet 62 day national cancer performance target

Whilst not every target that we set ourselves was achieved in full, the Trust continues to learn from when things do not go to plan and use these experiences to improve performance going forward.

During 2018/19, the Trust has coped with another year of increased demand for services and responded to significant winter pressures. There have been more A&E attendances and non-elective admissions than any previous year, and this combined with serious cases of flu and other viral illnesses where patients have been unable to leave hospital because of similar pressures on primary and social care services and in the care home sector, have meant that the Trust has been operating at full capacity.

The percentage bed occupancy (for acute medical beds) within the Trust throughout winter was very high at 98.3% (in Q3) which meant patients attending A&E and requiring admission could not be accommodated until other patients were discharged. Despite these pressures, the Trust was able to avoid any 12 hour trolley waits, cancelled less than 0.8% of planned operations (of which 99.5% were re-booked within 28 days), and less than 0.5% of medical patients had to be accommodated in another area of the hospital (medical outliers). The Trust has continued to achieve all the national waiting time targets for elective care and diagnostic tests, but has struggled to improve performance against the national Emergency Department access targets.

The ongoing national shortage of clinical staff and the need to respond to the increased demand meant that the Trust had to utilise bank and agency staff, plus overtime to maintain patient safety. However, despite these pressures, the Trust did achieve a 13% reduction in agency expenditure compared to 2017/18 (£8.2m compared to £9.4m). The Trust has continued to explore all avenues to increase recruitment of medical and nursing staff, including overseas recruitment from a number of different countries.

Maintaining safe levels of staffing and patient safety standards remain constant challenges that are managed by the Trust.

This has been another year of significant challenges but also some wonderful achievements, and I would like to formally record my pride in and gratitude for the dedication of all staff, who always work tirelessly and flexibly to ensure the best possible care for our patients. This includes the teams of volunteers and carer groups whose involvement and time is generously provided and gratefully received, they are a very important part of the overall team at the Trust, and make an invaluable contribution to the experience of patients. The Care Quality Commission's recognition that the Trust provides Outstanding services, came at the very end of the financial year and is a wonderful achievement, reflecting the skill and compassion of everyone who makes up the St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust team.

Ann Marr

Ann Marr, Chief Executive



1.1 Overview of the purpose and activities of the Trust

The Trust provides acute healthcare services at St Helens and Whiston hospitals, both of which are modern, high quality facilities. Community intermediate care services are delivered from Newton Community Hospital in Newton le Willows, which is also a modern purpose-built facility.

The Trust has an excellent track record of providing high standards of care to a population of approximately 360,000 people principally from St Helens, Knowsley, Halton, and Liverpool, but also from other neighbouring areas such as Warrington, Ormskirk and Wigan. In addition, the Mersey Regional Burns and Plastic Surgery Unit provides treatment for patients across Merseyside, Cheshire, North Wales, the Isle of Man and other parts of the North West, serving a population of over 4 million. During 2018/19, the Trust also became the Mid-Mersey High Acuity Stroke Unit (HASU), undertaking the acute treatment of all stroke patients from Warrington and Halton, as well as St Helens and Knowsley.

The Trust employed an average of 5,314 full time equivalent (FTE) staff during 2018/19 (including 426 temporary staff and excluding staff on capital project work). The Trust's income in 2018/19 was £402m.

Our catchment population

The communities served by the Trust are characterised by their industrial past, with local people being generally less healthy than the rest of England, and a higher proportion suffering from at least one long-term health condition.

Rates of smoking, cancer, obesity, and heart disease, related to poor general health and nutrition, are significantly higher than the national average.

Many areas also have high levels of deprivation, which in turn is linked to health inequalities.

The population in our catchment area is growing as a result of new housing developments and regeneration, but is also aging faster than the general population of the UK. This results in proportionally more older people who are living in poor health.

All of these factors give rise to a population with greater health needs that require increased access to both health and social care.

Collaborative working

In order to help create both clinically and financially sustainable services, the Trust is working in several different collaborations with partners in the local health system.

The Trust is a member of the Cheshire and Merseyside Health and Care Partnership (STP – Sustainability and Transformation Partnership), which is made up of all NHS Commissioners and Provider Trusts and the Local Authorities in Cheshire and Merseyside.

During 2018/19, the structure of the Cheshire and Merseyside Health and Care Partnership was revised to focus on a number of cross cutting themes, for example; Urgent and Emergency Care and Prevention at Scale and nine areas where local "place based" care could be developed.

The Trust is actively involved in a number of the cross cutting work streams e.g. Cancer Services, Women's and Children's, clinical support services and corporate services collaboration. The Trust's Chief Executive was Senior Responsible Officer for the Cancer work stream during 2018/19.

The Trust is also working in partnership with the Clinical Commissioning Groups (CCG), Local Authorities and other provider Trusts, to develop opportunities for integrated care systems in St Helens, Knowsley and Halton. Although each borough is developing different models for integration based on local circumstances, there is a strong commitment in each to achieve greater integration of health and care services.

The Trust continues to provide services to other NHS organisations. The Health Informatics Service (HIS) provides information systems and expertise to several CCGs and Trusts in Mid-Mersey. The Human Resources and Payroll teams have secured contracts to deliver the payroll and transactional HR service to a large proportion of the Trusts in Cheshire and Merseyside. They have also secured contracts to be the “lead employer” for Junior Doctors in training on behalf of a number of Deaneries, across the country.

Work is progressing to create pathology and diagnostic imaging networks across the North Mersey area and the Trust is an active member of both these groups.

The Chief Executive is chair of the local A&E delivery board, which co-ordinates the urgent care response across St Helens, Knowsley, Halton and Warrington.

In January 2019, the NHS Long Term Plan was published, and this has set a number of new goals and targets for the coming years. It has also confirmed the strategic direction of the NHS to be towards increasingly integrated provision of health care, at local level. This move towards health and care systems is formalised in an ambition to create Integrated Care Systems (ICSs) covering all areas of England by 2020/21.

1.2 The Trust's objectives

The Trust's vision is to deliver 5 Star Patient Care by providing an excellent patient experience through high quality health services. This is captured in the “Star Chart” which is used in Trust publications and displayed on noticeboards throughout the Trust.



This vision underpins the Trust objectives which set out plans for improving safety, care, systems, communication and pathways of treatment, supported by robust operational and financial performance and strategic developments.

The objectives are refreshed each year, reflecting national and local goals, the views of our stakeholders, carers, patients and staff as well as the Trust's own development plans.

The use of a familiar format for displaying the objectives since 2005 has ensured that staff throughout the organisation are able to recognise the Trust's high-level aims and understand how they individually can contribute towards their achievement.

The objectives are launched each year at a “Start of Year” Conference in which the Chief Executive summarises performance and achievements from the previous year and gives an overview of plans for the year to come.

Each objective is owned at a senior level by a director and they are cascaded to teams and individuals to form the basis of personal objectives for all staff.

Twice a year the Trust Board formally reviews progress against these objectives and initiates mitigating actions, where necessary, to ensure success and compliance.

The objectives for 2019/20 are publicised in poster form throughout the Trust buildings and are available on the Trust web site at: <http://www.sthk.nhs.uk/about/trust-publications/trust-objectives>

A summary is provided in the following table:

2019-20 Trust Objectives

5 STAR PATIENT CARE - Care

We will deliver care that is consistently high quality, well organised, meets best practice standards and provides the best possible experience of healthcare for our patients and their families

- Implement a new system for identifying deteriorating patients to improve timeliness of treatment
- Further improve discharge planning by replicating the success of the “Home for Lunch” initiative at weekends
- Continue to increase the range of services provided 7 days a week

5 STAR PATIENT CARE - Safety

We will embed a culture of safety improvement that reduces harm, improves outcomes and enhances patient experience. We will learn from mistakes and near-misses and use patient feedback to enhance delivery of care

- Continue to improve the ways that we deliver timely and effective assessment of patients in the Emergency Department
- Reduce the number of patient falls by 10% compared to 2018/19
- Implement a new electronic monitoring system in the Maternity Unit to ensure patients receive appropriate interventions at the right time
- Continue to learn lessons and improve practice as a result of reviewing and investigating hospital deaths

5 STAR PATIENT CARE - Pathways

As far as is practical and appropriate, we will reduce variations in care pathways to improve outcome, whilst recognising the specific individual needs of every patient

- Achieve the target of sending 85% of e-discharge summaries to GPs within 24 hours of discharge, to allow appropriate care to be continued outside of hospital
- Maximise the benefits of providing primary and community health services to support integrated care in our local health systems
- Increase capacity and improve clinical adjacencies at Whiston Hospital, to create more assessment space and support the expansion of Same Day Emergency Care (SDEC)

5 STAR PATIENT CARE - Communication

We will respect the privacy, dignity and individuality of every patient. We will be open and inclusive with patients and provide them with more information about their care. We will seek the views of patients, relatives and visitors, and use this feedback to help us improve services

- Improve information for patients, so it is available at the right time and in the right format, to meet individual needs
- Increase the use of patient feedback, to identify themes which help shape service developments and future improvement plans
- Increase the range of communication methods with the Trust to improve access and responsiveness for patients, relatives and others

5 STAR PATIENT CARE - Systems

We will improve Trust arrangements and processes, drawing upon best practice to deliver systems that are efficient, patient-centred, reliable and fit for their purposes

- Maximise the functionality of the new Medway system to support staff to deliver high quality care
- Improve the systems for booking outpatient appointments and reduce the number of appointments that have to be rearranged
- Increase the use of the e-Rostering system to improve deployment of staff resources
- Work with partners in St Helens to maximise the use of the Shared Care Record to share information relevant to decisions about patient care

DEVELOPING ORGANISATIONAL CULTURE AND SUPPORTING OUR WORKFORCE

We will use an open management style that encourages staff to speak up, in an environment that values, recognises and nurtures talent through learning and development. We will maintain a committed workforce that feel valued and supported to care for our patients.

- Continue to implement innovative approaches to recruitment and retention, to provide high quality care
- Continue to respond to feedback from staff to improve the working environment, so that the Trust continues to be recognised as an employer of choice
- Offer more training and development opportunities, to support staff in realising their potential
- Implement a capacity and demand modelling system to help plan the right number and skill mix of staff

OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE

We will meet and sustain national and local performance standards

- Achieve the national performance access standards:
 - Improvement trajectory for emergency access standards
 - Cancer treatment waiting times
 - 18 week access to treatment for planned care
 - Waiting times for diagnostic tests
 - Ambulance handover times
- Maximise the productivity and effectiveness of clinical services through the use of benchmarking and comparative data e.g. GIRFT and Model Hospital, to ensure that all services meet best practice standards

FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE, EFFICIENCY AND PRODUCTIVITY

We will achieve statutory and other financial duties set by regulators within a robust financial governance framework, delivering improved productivity and value for money

- Use the Model Hospital national benchmarking and reference costs information to optimise the efficiency of services and deliver cost improvement targets
- Work with healthcare organisations across Cheshire and Merseyside to explore further opportunities for collaborative corporate services
- Improve demand and capacity prediction and modelling to better align resource utilisation

STRATEGIC PLANS

We will work closely with NHS Improvement (NHSI) and commissioning, local authority and provider partners to develop proposals to improve the clinical and financial sustainability of services

We will work closely with NHS Improvement (NHSI) and commissioning, local authority and provider partners to develop proposals to improve the clinical and financial sustainability of services

- Work with health care system partners to develop plans to implement the ambitions of the NHS Long Term Plan, for our local population
- Collaborate with partners to develop plans for integrated care systems (ICS)
- Work with Cheshire and Merseyside Health Care Partnership to develop sustainable plans for service delivery across the wider health economy

Our 2018/20 objectives cover all aspects of patient care, our staff, use of resources and our longer-term plans for sustainability. These objectives are demanding but despite the pressures being faced across the NHS, the Board remain confident that our staff will continue to improve services and achieve positive results for the benefit of patients, visitors and work colleagues.

1.3 Key issues and risks

The Chief Executive's opening statement highlights the key pressures that the Trust has experienced during 2018/19, and it is expected that they will continue to be the key risks facing the Trust in the next year. These include recruitment and staff shortages, increasing demand for services and NHS financial pressures.

The Trust's approach to managing risks is covered in detail within the Governance Statement later in this document. However, in summary, it is founded on an effective IT recording and reporting system

which all senior managers can use to document risks; gauge their potential impact; capture appropriate plans in mitigation; and share across the organisation.

The Trust has undertaken risk assessments and worked with the Department of Health and Social Care to prepare for the potential implications of leaving the European Union on the supply of medical equipment, consumables, medicines and staff.

1.4 Going concern

The Directors have a reasonable expectation that the Trust has adequate resources to continue in operational existence for the foreseeable future. For this reason, they continue to adopt the going concern basis in preparing the accounts. This approach has been approved by the Audit Committee. (See also note 1 accounting policies, in the Trust's accounts for more detail).



2. Performance Analysis

2.1 Key performance measures

Each month, the Trust produces an Integrated Performance Report (IPR) which charts performance against over 800 measures. Some of these reflect national and constitutional targets, some are agreed with commissioners locally, and some are internally generated to help monitor achievement of the Trust objectives. Summaries of these reports can be accessed on the Trust's website within regular Board papers at: <http://www.sthk.nhs.uk/about/trust-board/trust-board-papers-2018>

Whilst this section provides some indicators of the Trust's performance in 2018/19, more detailed data on quality achievements is presented in the Trust's Annual Quality Account available on our website at: <http://www.sthk.nhs.uk/about/trust-publications/quality-accounts>

The level and types of clinical activity for 2018/19 compared to 2017/18 are detailed in the following table:

Activity Type	2017/18 (000's)	2018/19 (000's)	Difference %
Outpatient 1st attendances	138.2	144.4	4.6%
Outpatient follow-up attendances	315.1	306.9	- 2.6%
Ward attenders	19.1	20.1	5.2%
Outpatient procedures	102.9	99.5	- 3.2%
Elective inpatients	7.0	6.9	- 1.0%
Day case	42.9	43.5	1.5%
Non-elective inpatients (less Obstetrics)	54.4	57.5	5.6%
A&E attendances	111.3	115.7	3.9%
Births	4.1	4.1	- 1.1%

During 2018/19, the Trust has experienced further increases in A&E attendances and Non-Elective admissions, above commissioned levels. There have also been increases in outpatient referrals as the impact of the Referral Management Schemes (RMS) put in place in each of the three main commissioning CCGs has plateaued. There has been a small decrease in births compared to the previous financial year.

2.2 Performance in 2018/19

Key performance against national targets in 2018/19 is provided in the following table:

Summary of key national targets 2018/19	Target	Perform.
Emergency Department waiting times within 4 hours (all types mapped)	95.0%	87.1%
% of patients waiting less than 62 days for first treatment for cancer from urgent GP referral	85.0%	88.3%
% of patients receiving first treatment within 31 days from diagnosis of cancer	96.0%	98.1%
% of admitted patients treated within 18 weeks of referral	92.0%	92.4%
% of patients treated within 28 days following a cancelled operation	100.0%	99.5%
Number of Hospital Acquired MRSA bacteraemia incidences	0	1*
Number of Hospital Acquired C. Difficile incidences	40	21
% of patients admitted with a stroke spending at least 90% of their stay on a stroke unit	83.0%	85.7%
Staff sickness	4.7%	5.03%

*1 MRSA contaminant

It is testament to the hard work of Trust staff that, despite escalating activity in our hospitals and operating at full capacity for much of the year, the Trust performed exceptionally well against the majority of national targets.

2.3 Financial Performance

For the financial year 2018/19, the Trust received £402m of income. At the start of the year, the Trust submitted a plan for a £11m surplus which was predicated on receiving the full allocation of £12.8m from the Provider Sustainability Fund (PSF). The Trust actually received £10.967m PSF.

Further cash support of £11.499m (net of repayments during the year) was provided by the Department of Health and Social Care (DHSC), mainly in the latter part of the financial year, of which £2.693m relates to anticipated delayed PSF payments from NHS England and brings the total cash support balance to £19.129m.

These loans are in the form of a revenue support loan facility which attracts 1.5% interest each year with the principal amount being re-payable between January 2020 and March 2022 (although £2.693m is anticipated to have been repaid by April 2019).

In responding to the unprecedented demand for services over the winter period and opening additional capacity (escalation beds), combined with increased staff shortages the Trust has maintained patient safety, but this also resulted in increased expenditure, often at premium rates. Additionally, these pressures have meant that the Trust was unable to achieve the 95% target of 4 hour A&E waiting times and therefore lost a significant element of the PSF funding that had been assumed in the financial plans.

However, the Trust received an additional £5.133m general distribution from PSF which meant that the resulting financial outturn position is therefore a small performance deficit of £0.597m, which is an underlying deficit of £10.1m if the final PSF income of £10.697m is excluded.

The Trust has an effective financial governance framework in place, supported through independent external and internal scrutiny. In 2018/19, Grant Thornton UK LLP provided independent external assurance that the Trust is properly accounting for public money; that it is efficient and effective in its use of resources.

Income

Of the income received by the Trust, £325m (81%) came from patient-related activities. The largest contribution of £137m was from St Helens Clinical Commissioning Group (CCG).

The remaining 19% of total operating income came mainly from three sources: NHS North West Deanery for the education and training of junior doctors; services provided to other organisations; and Private Finance Initiative (PFI) support funding.

Expenditure

The Trust strives to secure better value and become more efficient each year, thereby freeing up resources for direct patient care. In this regard, the Trust delivered £15m of savings through its cost improvement programme in 2018/19.

A robust Quality Impact Assessment is undertaken for all proposed saving initiatives to ensure they do not inadvertently impact on the quality of the care provided, the clinical outcomes, or patient experiences. It is only following a successful conclusion of this process that approval to proceed is provided by the Trust's Medical and Nursing Directors.

In 2018/19, the Trust's capital expenditure was £9.6m primarily for the provision of new and replacement equipment and capacity-related schemes.

2.4 Collaboration and partnership working

In addition to the Trust's collaborative working with other providers and the Cheshire and Merseyside Health and Social Care Partnership, the Trust also has an excellent track record of good relationships with patient groups and representatives, such as Healthwatch.

The Trust is a provider of services for other NHS organisations, via our shared Health Informatics Service (HIS), the provision of payroll services to the majority of Trusts in Merseyside and being the Lead Employer for Junior Doctors in training on behalf of the Deanery.

The Trust works in partnership with recognised trade unions and has effective and productive employee relations.

There is regular contact with the Local Authorities and the Trust attends the Health and Wellbeing Boards in St Helens, Knowsley and Halton.

Performance Report Signed:

Ann Marr

Chief Executive
22nd May 2019

Section 2

Accountability Report

This section provides the reader with information on the composition and organisation of the Trust's governance structures and how they support the achievement of objectives.

3 Directors Report

3.1 The Board of Directors

The Trust is managed by a Board of Directors that consists of both Executive and Non-Executive Directors (NED) with a Non-Executive Chairman. The composition of the Board during 2018/19 was as follows:

	Position	Name	Term of Office	Committee Membership
Non-Executive Directors	Chairman	Richard Fraser	Appointed May 2014 & 2016	Remuneration
	Deputy Chairman / SID	Denis Mahony	Appointed August 2012 & 2016	Audit Finance & Performance Remuneration
	Non-Executive Director	Val Davies	Appointed July 2017	Charitable Funds Quality Remuneration
	Non-Executive Director	Su Rai	Appointed September 2012, 2014 & 2016	Audit Finance & Performance Remuneration
	Non-Executive Director	David Graham	Appointed December 2014 & 2016 (Resigned August 2018)	Quality Remuneration
	Non-Executive Director	Jeff Kozar	Appointed January 2018	Finance & Performance Audit Remuneration
	Non-Executive Director	Paul Growney	Appointed September 2018	Charitable Funds Quality Remuneration
Executive Directors	Chief Executive	Ann Marr	Appointed January 2003	Executive Quality
	Director of Human Resources/Deputy CEO	Anne-Marie Stretch	Appointed July 2003	Executive Quality
	Medical Director	Kevin Hardy	Appointed November 2012 (Retired and returned April 2018)	Executive Finance & Performance Quality
	Director of Nursing Midwifery and Governance	Sue Redfern	Appointed May 2013	Executive Quality
	Director of Finance	Nik Khashu	Appointed October 2015	Executive Finance & Performance Quality
Associate Directors	Director of Transformation	Tiffany Hemming	Appointed May 2017	Executive
	Director of Corporate Services	Nicola Bunce	Appointed July 2017	Executive Quality Finance & Performance
	Director of Informatics	Christine Walters	Appointed September 2015	Executive
	Director of Estates and Facilities	Peter Williams	Appointed July 2017 Retired December 2018	Executive
	Director of Operations and Performance	Rob Cooper	Appointed January 2017	Executive Finance & Performance Quality
	Associate NED	Jean Quinn	Appointed September 2018 Resigned January 2019	Quality

The six Non-Executive Directors and five Executive Directors detailed in the table above are voting members, ensuring that in the event of a vote the non-executive directors always have the majority.

Directors are appraised each year to review their contribution over the previous twelve months and to set objectives linked to those of the Trust for the following year. The Chairman is appraised by an officer of NHS Improvement.

Any skills gaps and training and development requirements are also reviewed annually against the NHS Improvement Well Led Framework to ensure continuous development and optimum functioning as a unitary board.

Under the Trust's standards of business conduct, Directors and senior staff are required to declare any interests which are published annually on the Trust's website. Those declared for 2018/19 are available through the following link:
<http://www.sthk.nhs.uk/about/trust-board>

3.2 Fit and Proper Persons Requirement (FPPR)

The 2014 Health and Social Care Act imposed additional requirements on the posts of Directors to be '*Fit and Proper Persons*'. In assessing whether a person is of good character, the matters considered must include convictions, whether the person has been struck off a register of professionals, bankruptcy, sequestration and insolvency, appearing on barred lists and being prohibited from holding directorships under other laws. In addition, Directors should not have been involved or complicit in any serious misconduct, mismanagement or failure of care in carrying out an NHS regulated activity.

The Trust requires all Directors to make an annual declaration of compliance with the FPPR standards. In 2018/19, all Board members were required to complete a self-certificate to confirm compliance with these standards, and where appropriate external assessments, including Disclosure and Barring Service (DBS) checks were undertaken. The results were scrutinised by the Trust Chairman who concluded that the Board members were, and remain, fit to carry out the roles they are in.

3.3 Statement on disclosure to auditors

So far as the Directors are aware, at the time of approving this Annual Report, there is no relevant audit information of which the Trust's auditor is unaware. In addition, the Directors have taken steps to make themselves aware of any relevant audit information to establish that the Trust's auditor is aware of that information.

This information has been shared with the Trust's Auditors who have supported the conclusions reached and confirmed that they could find no relevant audit information to the contrary.

The Trust has a duty to report any incident regarding the loss of personal data to the Information Commissioners Office, and the one such incident occurring in 2018/19 is covered in the Governance Statement of this Annual Report.



4. Annual Governance Statement

4.1 Scope of responsibility

As Accountable Officer, I have responsibility for maintaining a sound system of internal control that supports the achievement of the NHS Trust's policies, aims and objectives, whilst safeguarding the public funds and departmental assets for which I am personally responsible, in accordance with the responsibilities assigned to me. I am also responsible for ensuring that the NHS Trust is administered prudently and economically and that resources are applied efficiently and effectively. I also acknowledge my responsibilities as set out in the *NHS Trust Accountable Officer Memorandum*.

4.2 The Purpose of the system of internal control

The system of internal control is designed to manage risk to a reasonable level rather than to eliminate all risk of failure to achieve policies, aims and objectives; it can therefore only provide reasonable and not absolute assurance of effectiveness. The system of internal control is based on an ongoing process designed to identify and prioritise the risks to the achievement of the policies, aims and objectives of St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust, to evaluate the likelihood of those risks being realised and the impact should they be realised, and to manage them efficiently, effectively and economically. The system of internal control has been in place in St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust for the year ended 31 March 2019 and up to the date of approval of the annual report and accounts.

4.3 Capacity to handle risk

The Trust supports staff to identify and plan for potential risks to the delivery of the Trust's objectives. All risks are owned by an appropriate manager and reviewed regularly to ensure the mitigation plans are effective in reducing the level of risk exposure. There is a Risk Management Council that is part of the Trust's governance arrangements.

The Trust risk profile is reviewed by the Risk Management Council each month, which includes representation from each care group and corporate service and a member of the Executive Team. A report is then drafted by the chair for presentation to the Executive Committee, this includes any risks rated as high or extreme, which are escalated to the Corporate Risk Register and assigned to a member of the Executive Team for oversight. The Corporate Risk Register and Trust risk profile are also regularly reported to the Trust Board.

The involvement of the Executive Committee and the Board in regularly reviewing risks ensures that the level of exposure that the Trust is willing to tolerate (the risk appetite) is regularly tested.

Training in undertaking clinical risk assessments, and of identifying and reporting risks and incidents using the DATIX is part of the induction process for all staff joining the Trust. Regular training is also available to managers and risk management is included as part of management development programmes. Guidance on the risk management process and use of the Datix system is easily accessible via the Trust intranet.

4.4 The risk and control framework

The Trust promotes a culture of openness and encourages all staff and service users to actively report any issues, incidents or near misses, where they feel inappropriate action may have occurred, or systems and practices could be improved.

Clinical risk assessments, complaints, claims, staff feedback (via the national staff survey and local surveys), and social media channels are other sources of information which support the Trust in identifying and responding to any underlying themes. These are reviewed by the Patient Safety Council.

The Trust has an electronic risk and incident recording system (Datix) and all managers within the organisation have access to it. Potential risks are identified and assessed (using the recognised NPSA 5 x 5 matrix of likelihood and consequence) and added to the register. The risk owner details controls and assurances that are within their remit and then re-assesses the risk to see whether these measures have been beneficial in reducing the risk score. The risk owner also identifies the relevant line manager who will also have oversight of the risk and be able to review the actions in mitigation.

Risks with a score below 15 are managed at care groups or corporate department level. Each risk is allocated an appropriate review date and on a monthly basis local governance meetings are held with appropriate representation and senior management to consider the risk profile, any missing risks, and to evaluate those requiring review. Frequent evaluation of risks takes place to ensure that the plans in mitigation are updated and accurately recorded on the Datix system.

If, following review and mitigating action within the care group or corporate department, the risk score is still 15 or above, it is automatically escalated to the Corporate Risk Register and “owned” by the most appropriate Director to see if more senior intervention can further reduce the potential risk to the organisation. As at 31st March 2019, there were a total of 741 risks recorded on Datix. The table below shows the profile of the risk scores (between 1 and 25):

Very Low Risk			Low Risk			Moderate Risk				High/ Extreme Risk			
1	2	3	4	5	6	8	9	10	12	15	16	20	25
54	59	23	109	12	148	63	113	36	114	1	7	2	0
136 = 18.35%			269 = 36.30%			326 = 43.99%				10 = 1.35%			

As can be seen, 10 of these risks were scored at 15 or above and captured on the CRR. In summary, these related to:

- Cyber security
- Staffing levels in a number of specialist areas, as a result of national staff shortages
- Delivery of national access standards
- The challenges of meeting the Trust's finance and efficiency plans
- The impact of the apprenticeship levy
- The implications of EU exit
- The impact of migrating to a new Patient Administration System

All of the CRR risks have been reported and discussed at the Trust Board.

The Trust's internal auditors undertook a review of the risk management processes during 2018/19 which resulted in a finding of substantial assurance.

In addition, the Board has identified the strategic risks that in theory could be catastrophic to the delivery of the organisations long term purpose and goals, and these are captured in the Board Assurance Framework (BAF) which is considered by the Board four times per year. Strategic concerns on the BAF as at 31st March 2019 were:

- Systemic failures in the quality of care
- Failure to develop or deliver long term financial sustainability plans for the Trust and with system partners
- Sustained failure to maintain operational performance/deliver contracts
- Failure to protect the reputation of the Trust
- Failure to work in partnership with stakeholders
- Failure to attract and retain staff with the skills required to deliver high quality services
- Major and sustained failure of essential assets, infrastructure
- Major and sustained failure of essential IT systems

In developing its plans for 2019/20, the Board has assessed the future risks that will need to be managed, these remain similar to the key risks in 2018/19 and include recruitment difficulties and staff shortages, increasing demand for services, financial pressures and the move to more integrated systems of delivering health and social care at a local (place based) level.

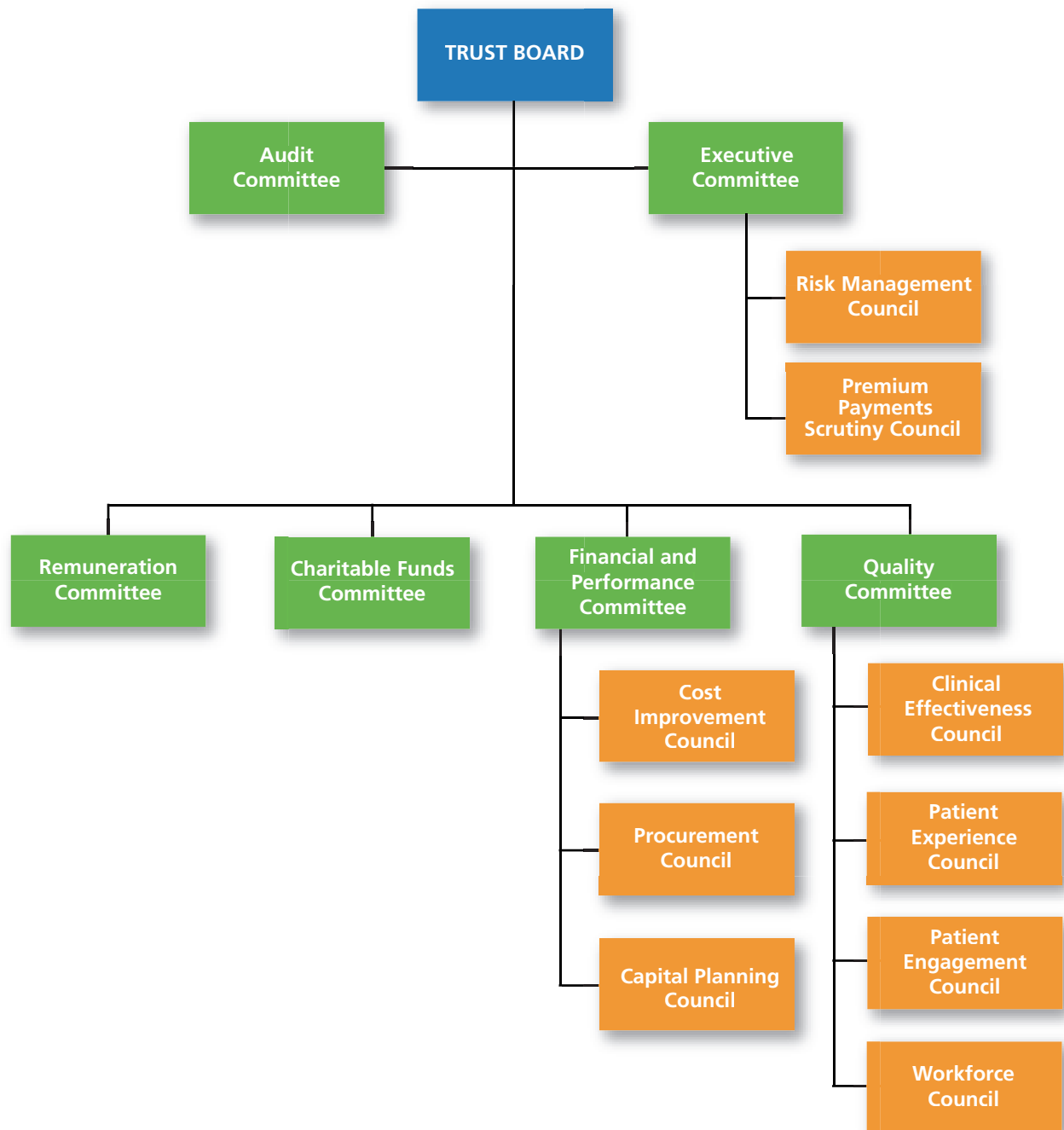
The Board Assurance Framework was reviewed in 2018/19 as part of the internal audit programme with the conclusion that;

'The organisation's Assurance Framework is structured to meet the NHS requirements, is visibly used by the Board and clearly reflects the risks discussed by the Board.'

Copies of reports to the Board are readily available on the Trust website:
<http://www.sthk.nhs.uk/about/trust-board/trust-board-papers-2018>

Governance structure

The Trust has six Committees, some with supporting Councils, reporting to the Board in line with the following structure:



With the exception of the Executive Committee, chaired by the Chief Executive, each is chaired by a NED. After each meeting, the respective chair prepares a report to the Trust Board on matters considered on the agenda, the areas where assurance is being provided, and any issues requiring escalation for Board intervention or decision.

Remuneration Committee

The Remuneration Committee is comprised of the Chairman and all the NEDs.

Its duties include approving the remuneration and terms of service for the Chief Executive and Executive Directors, and to consider the appointment of Executive Directors and other very senior managers.

The Committee met 5 times during the year in June 2018, September 2018, November 2018 and January 2019. There was a minimum of 4 Non-Executive Directors present on each occasion.

Audit Committee

The Audit Committee has a membership of three NEDs, one of whom is a qualified accountant, and the others have commercial and business experience at a senior level.

In addition, the Trust's external and internal auditors along with the Director of Finance are regularly invited to attend. In 2018/19, the Committee met on five occasions.

The Audit Committee provides the Trust Board with independent and objective scrutiny of the financial systems and processes, risk management, and compliance with relevant legislation. The Committee also monitors and reviews clinical audit effectiveness.

Through the agreement of an annual programme of independent audits, the Committee gains assurance that the data being provided to the Board, on which decisions are based, is accurate and complies with guidance.

This programme included audits of the quality spot checks including combined financial systems, risk management, mandatory training, enterprise mobile computing, quality spot checks and locality reviews of individual services. These audits provide independent assurance to the Board that the quality and accuracy of the information reported is sufficiently robust to be relied on.

Quality Committee

The Quality Committee oversees quality governance. Performance within the Trust is measured against a range of parameters, including those related to activity levels, quality of care, staffing and finance. This is captured each month in an Integrated Performance Report (IPR), which incorporates commentary from senior management to aid understanding of the performance data. This commentary also seeks to identify links between factors such as staffing numbers, quality of care, patient experience, costs, activity levels and performance against national targets to turn raw data into information that can be used to support decision making.

The Quality Committee meets each month (excluding August and December) to review all aspects of quality, including the relevant sections within the IPR.

The Quality Committee is supported by a number of Councils that consider in great detail issues relating to the monitoring of patient safety, patient experience, clinical effectiveness and workforce. Chair reports from each of these Councils are reported to the Committee which include any matters for escalation.

Finance and Performance Committee

Like the Quality Committee, this Committee meets each month (excluding August and December) and reviews the IPR in detail. However, their primary focus is on performance against the financial and activity targets.

Deep dives into the Trust's Cost Improvement Programme, to ensure that there are no unintended consequences from efficiency savings is another key role, along with exploring service line costs and benchmarking to assess the relative productivity and efficiency of different services.

During 2018/19, the Finance and Performance Committee has also maintained an overview of the Urgent and Emergency Care Improvement Programme, which was established to undertake focused improvement work across five work streams, to achieve the Emergency Department National Access Standards.

The Committee is also supported in its work by a number of Councils that undertake detailed reviews to ensure that the data received by the Committee is robust, and provides the appropriate basis for forward planning and management decision making. During 2018/19, an additional council has been established to support the development of a rolling five year capital plan.

Charitable Funds Committee

The Trust's Charitable Funds Committee meets at least three times a year and is responsible for managing the income and expenditure of any charitable and donated monies and assets held by the Trust.

The Committee actively promotes fundraising and regular expenditure from funds and also ensures that the Trust receives a reasonable rate of interest from investments made of the funds held in trust.

Executive Committee

The team of Executive and Associate Executive Directors, led by the Chief Executive, is the senior management decision making group within the Trust and is responsible for planning, organising, directing and controlling the organisation's systems and resources to achieve objectives and targets set by the Board.

The Executive Committee aims to meet each week, and exercises the authority delegated to the Chief Executive and Directors to ensure that the organisation is effectively managed, performance is scrutinised and individual managers are held to account.

The Committee is supported in its work by the Risk Management Council which meets on a monthly basis to ensure that risks to the organisation are appropriately managed, and where necessary escalated for more senior intervention.

The Trust has an active Information Governance Steering Group reporting to the Risk Management Council, and chaired by the Trust's Caldicott Guardian. This group ensures that the information the Trust holds, in particular personal information on behalf of patients and staff, is safeguarded at all times.

Governance framework of the organisation

The Board is collectively responsible for establishing a system of internal control and for putting in place arrangements for gaining assurance about the effectiveness of that system.

The Board of Directors consists of a non-executive Chair, five Non-Executive Directors, a Chief Executive and four Executive Directors. A further four non-voting Associate Directors regularly attend Board meetings. The Board also aims to include 1 associate Non-Executive Director, to support succession planning.

The Board has a suite of documents (the Corporate Governance Manual) which contains the Trust's standing orders, standing financial instructions, and scheme of reservation and delegation of powers, which set out the regulatory framework for the business conduct of the organisation.

High standards of governance are maintained through the independence of the Non-Executive Directors (NEDs), achieved by the following:

- All NEDs are appointed for fixed terms ensuring a regular turnover and the introduction of new skills and experience
- The non-executive membership of the Board outnumbers the executive element for all issues requiring a vote
- The NEDs (including the Trust Chairman) meet separately from the Executive Directors, on occasion to discuss Trust business
- The composition of the Board is managed to ensure that the NEDs have a range of skills and experience that enables them to provide constructive challenge, fully understand the business of the Trust and participate in the Trust's governance arrangements. They are therefore able to hold the Executive Directors to account for the performance and delivery of the strategic agenda set by the Board
- NEDs chair the Board and appropriate Board Committees, and through chairman reporting, provide assurance to the Trust Board that the Trust is effectively governed.

Changes to the Board

2018/19 saw the following changes in the Board of Director membership:

- Richard Fraser, Chairman, continued as interim Chair at Southport and Ormskirk Hospitals NHS Trust, until November 2018

- David Graham resigned his Non-Executive Director position in August 2018
- Paul Growney was appointed as Non-Executive Director in September 2018, replacing David Graham
- Jean Quinn was appointed as an Associate Non-Executive Director in September 2018, but due to personal circumstances resigned in January 2019
- Peter Williams retired from the post of Director of Estates and Facilities in December 2018, and these duties were incorporated into the Director of Corporate Services role

All new Directors are provided with tailored induction programmes on their commencement and this was the case in 2018/19.

Board Meetings

The Trust Board held ten meetings in public during 2018/19. Part 2 of these meetings are held in private to discuss confidential issues such as the details of serious untoward incidents relating to patients, confidential staff matters, commercial decisions such as bidding to provide new services or to allow time for the Board to undertake development activities and formulate strategy.

All Trust Board and Committee meetings were quorate, except for the Audit Committee in April 2018, where there was only 1 NED in attendance. The Trust aims to achieve at least 70% attendance by all Directors, and this was achieved by the majority of Board members, who served throughout. Attendance was impacted by the transition to another role in one case and periods of absence due to ill health for others.

Attendance by the Directors is summarised in the following table:

Board Members		Trust Board	Audit Committee	Quality Committee	Finance and Performance Committee	Charitable Funds Committee	Executive Committee	Total	% Attendance
Name	Position	10	5	9*	10	3	43	80	%
Richard Fraser	Chair	8						8/10	80%
Denis Mahony***	NED	8	2		4 (of 8)	1 (of 2)		15/25	60%
Su Rai	NED	10	5		10			25/25	100%
David Graham (until August 2018)	NED	1 (of 4)		1 (of 3)				2/7	29%
Val Davies	NED	9		8		1		18/22	82%
Jeff Kozer	NED	10	3		8			21/25	84%
Paul Growney (from September 2018)	NED	5 (of 6)		1 (of 1)**		1 (of 1)**		7/8	87%
Jean Quinn (from September 2018 – January 2019)	Associate NED	3 (of 4)		0 (of 4)				3/8	37%
Ann Marr	Chief Executive	10		6			35	51/62	82%
Anne-Marie Stretch	Director of HR/ Deputy CEO	9		5			39	53/62	85%
Nikhil Khashu	Director of Finance and Information	10	4	7	9	3	34	67/80	83%
Kevin Hardy	Medical Director	8		6	7		28	49/72	68%
Sue Redfern	Director of Nursing, Midwifery and Governance	10		6			30	46/62	74%
Rob Cooper	Director of Operations and Performance	9		5	9		34	57/72	79%
Tiffany Hemming	Director of Transformation	9					31	40/53	75%
Christine Walters	Director of Informatics	9					33	42/53	79%
Nicola Bunce	Director of Corporate Services	10		7	6		36	59/72	82%
Peter Williams (until December 2018)	Director of Estates and Facilities	6 (of 7)					29 (of 31)	35/38	92%
Meetings quorate		Yes	4 (of the 5 mtgs)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	79%	

*The Quality Committee meeting scheduled for July was cancelled due to the CQC inspection of core services

** Paul Growney became chair of the Charitable Funds Committee in January 2019 and a member of the Quality Committee in February 2019

***Denis Mahony was acting Chairman for a period between October – January and during this period did not attend committee meetings. He also undertook additional duties as Deputy Chair, during the period that Richard Fraser was the interim Chairman at Southport and Ormskirk Hospitals NHS Trust.

In order to discuss in detail key issues affecting the organisation; longer term strategic plans to ensure sustainability; and wider partnership working across the local health economy, four strategy meetings were held in 2018/19. Board Development sessions were also held throughout the year and the topics covered are summarised in the following table:

Purpose	Provider / Lead	Date
Clinical Strategy Review	Kevin Hardy, Medical Director	April 2018 Strategy Board
Fit and Proper Persons Regulations Briefing and Updated Policy	Anne-Marie Stretch, Deputy CEO/Director of HR	
Knowsley Public Health Report Presentation	Matthew Ashton, Director of Public Health	June 2018 Strategy Board
CQC Well Led Review Development Session	Sue Redfern, Director of Nursing, Midwifery and Governance	July 2018
Legal and Regulatory Update; <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Integrated care governance • Learning from deaths guidance and issues • Legal claims and risk profile 	Hill Dickinson LLP	October 2018
Primary Care Strategy	Rob Cooper, Director of Operations and Performance	December 2018 Board Time Out
Digital Strategy Developments	Christine Walters, Director of Informatics	
NHS funding and capacity and demand planning	Nik Khashu, Director of Finance and Information & Rob Cooper, Director of Operations and Performance	
Briefing on the NHS Long Term Plan and 2019/20 Planning Guidance	Nik Khashu, Director of Finance and Information	January 2019
Draft Operational Plan 2019/20	Nicola Bunce, Director of Corporate Services & Gareth Lawrence, Deputy Director of Finance	February 2019 Strategy Board
Information Governance Training	Craig Walker, Information Governance Manager	

To effectively carry out their duties Board members need to be able to probe the data conveyed in formal reports to the Board and its Committees and triangulate that with the softer intelligence gained through attendance at events, staff and carer listening sessions, and ward and department visits. NEDs are encouraged to test out material provided when speaking to staff to gain that further assurance of accurate reporting of information throughout the Trust.

All Directors participate in a schedule of Quality Ward Rounds (QWRs) during the year, which supports them to gain a greater understanding of the work in each specialty and the achievements and issues that each ward is managing.

Hearing first-hand experiences from patients, learning from the results of patient and staff surveys, and being conscious of the themes of incidents and complaints is important to the overall effectiveness of the Board, and these topics remain regular agenda items.

In 2018-19, the Trust received 267 new complaints that were opened for investigation. This represents an increase of 18.7% in comparison to 2017-18, when the Trust received 225 new complaints, but remains lower than 2016/17 when 338 complaints were received. There was a decrease in the number of complainants who were dissatisfied with the initial response and raised a stage two complaint; 37 in 2018-19 compared to 44 in 2017-18. The total number of PALS contacts increased by 36% to 3174 in 2018-19.

Work continues to improve the timeliness of complaints responses and the average time to respond to new complaints within the agreed timescale has improved from 67% in 2017-18 to 92.1% in 2018-19.

In 2018/9, the top five causes of complaints, were clinical treatment, patient and nursing care, appointments, admissions and discharges and communications. These are very similar to previous years, although there has been an increase in complaints relating to appointments due to the disruption the Trust experienced to its patient booking systems as a result of implementing the new Patient Administration System.

The source of the highest number of complaints was the Medical Care Group, which includes the Emergency Department, and is the department with the highest volume of patients.

The Board remains committed to improvement by reducing the overall numbers of complaints; ensuring complaints are responded to in a timely manner; and making sure that lessons are learned.

Care Quality Commission

The Care Quality Commission (CQC) is the independent regulator for health and social care in England and through inspection makes sure that the public are provided with safe, effective, compassionate and high-quality care, and encourages services improvement. Their report on the Trust, published in March 2019, provided significant assurance to the Board of the quality of services being delivered. The overall Trust 'Outstanding' rating achieved during the most recent inspection is an improvement on the overall rating at the last inspection in 2015, which was 'Good'.

The Trust is required each year to register with the CQC and has a legal duty to be compliant with the fundamental standards set out in the Health and Social Care Act.

As part of the 2018 inspection, the CQC inspected Marshalls Cross Medical Centre, which is a new service which the Trust was contracted to provide from March 2018. The inspection identified 3 breaches of the CQC regulations, for this service. The Trust had already taken action to start to address the issues identified at the time of the inspection in August 2018, and following the publication of the final CQC report in March 2019, is now preparing its formal response for the CQC to demonstrate that the regulations are now being fully met by the service.



NHS Improvement (NHSI) and the Provider Licence Conditions

The Trust works closely with NHSI (the Trust's regulating body) in pursuing the national priorities detailed in the NHS Mandate and Single Oversight Framework (SOF). This framework sets out the key policies and processes which govern the relationship between NHS Trusts and NHSI in terms of oversight and escalation mechanisms, development and support. The Trust has continued to be assessed as segmentation level 2 by NHSI throughout 2018/19, with routine monitoring and no special level interventions or support.

During 2018/19, the Trust self-certified that it complied with the licence, NHS acts and NHS Constitution (Condition G6 (3)) and with the required governance arrangements (Condition FT4 (8)), as required for the SOF.

The Trust has undertaken a self-assessment against the NHSI/CQC Well Led Framework and developed an action plan to address areas that were identified for improvement. The Trust was then subject to the CQC Well Led inspection in August and was rated as Outstanding for this domain.

NHS Pensions

As an employer with staff entitled to membership of the NHS Pension Scheme, control measures are in place to ensure all employer obligations contained within the Scheme regulations are complied with. This includes ensuring that deductions from salary, employer's contributions and payments into the Scheme are in accordance with the Scheme rules, and that member Pension Scheme records are accurately updated in accordance with the timescales detailed in the Regulations.

Equality and Diversity Obligations

Control measures are in place to ensure that all the organisation's obligations under equality, diversity and human rights legislation are complied with.

Appropriate policies are maintained to ensure that the required standards are met; examples being:

- The Recruitment and Selection Policy is designed to inform management and staff how to conduct employment in an objective, fair and effective manner
- The Equality and Diversity Policy is designed to provide employment equality. This ensures that no applicant or employee will receive less favourable treatment on the grounds that they possess a "protected characteristic" as defined by the Equality Act, or any other individual characteristic, for example, social class or carer status.

Modern slavery and human trafficking statement

The Trust is fully aware of the responsibility it bears toward its customers, employees and the communities which it serves. The Trust has created a set of ethical values to guide employees and suppliers in its business dealings.

The Trust uses the NHS standard contract and expects that all its suppliers of goods and services adhere to similarly high ethical principles. As required by the Modern Slavery Act 2015, the Trust has reviewed its supply chains and seeks assurance from existing and new suppliers that they can meet the "Supplier Code of Conduct" and comply with the Act. The Trust has also identified potential areas of greater risk including contractors dealing with the provision of food, construction, cleaning, and clothing.

Advice and training on slavery and human trafficking is available to staff through the Safeguarding Team.

Workforce Strategy and Workforce Safeguards

The Board has a Workforce Strategy with agreed objectives for ensuring that the Trust can attract and retain the right number of staff with the necessary skills to deliver high quality patient care, and who are fully engaged and offered opportunities to develop their careers within the organisation. This strategy is currently being refreshed to ensure that it aligns with the workforce aspirations set out in the NHS Long Term Plan.

The Board approves the high level workforce plan each year as part of the annual operational planning cycle, which takes into account projected activity growth or change and agreed service developments. The Trust utilises a suite of rostering tools to roster staff, plan activities and monitor staffing in line with patient acuity on a day to day basis. Nurse safer staffing information is reported to the Trust Board in the Integrated Performance Report every month, and there are detailed workforce key indicator reports twice a year which include recruitment, vacancy and turnover information. Establishment reviews are undertaken by a multi-disciplinary team every 6 months to ensure that staffing numbers and skill mix are appropriate and these are reported to the Quality Committee. The Trust has a guardian of safe working who reports twice a year on the working hours and shift patterns of Doctors in training.

Register of Interests/Managing Conflicts of Interest

The Trust has an up to date Register of Interests, which is published via the Trust website, as required by the "Managing Conflicts of Interest in the NHS" guidance.

Board Assurance

Through the systems outlined in this report, Directors are able to provide the necessary assurances to the Board that its annual and longer-term objectives can be met and risks to their achievement are being appropriately managed.

To support this view, the Trust also receives a significant amount of independent and external feedback from a range of sources that provides the Board with further assurance. Examples are summarised in the following paragraphs.

In accordance with Public Sector Internal Audit Standards, the Director of Internal Audit (DoIA) is required to provide an annual opinion on the overall adequacy and effectiveness of the organisation's risk management, control and governance processes (i.e. the organisation's system of internal control). This is achieved through a risk-based plan of work, agreed with management and approved by the Audit Committee, which can provide assurance covering:

- Financial systems
- M&T and Information Governance
- Performance and Board reporting systems
- Processes to ensure service quality
- Processes underpinning management of the workforce
- Governance risk and legal compliance of statutory functions

For 2018/19, the DoIA opinion was that substantial assurance can be given that the organisations Assurance Framework is structured to meet the NHS requirements, is visibly used by the Board and clearly reflects the risk discussed by the Board.

The basis for that opinion was:

- The design and operation of the underpinning assurance framework and assurance processes
- The range of individual assurances arising from risk based internal audit assignments that have been reported throughout the period.
- The organisations response to internal audit recommendations, and the extent to which they have been implemented

The Trust's external Anti-Fraud advisors report for 2018/19 confirmed that the Trust remained compliant against anti-fraud standards, and was strong with respect to ensuring that NHS resources are protected against fraud, bribery or corruption.

4.5 Review of economy, efficiency and effectiveness and use of resources

Use of Resources Rating (URR)

The URR risk rating has five equally-weighted metrics: liquidity ratio; capital servicing capacity; I&E margin; I&E margin variance from plan; and performance against the planned agency ceiling.

The overall risk rating ranges from 1 to 4, where 4 represents the highest level of financial risk. The rating also has an override methodology which means:

- Scoring a 4 on any metric returns an overall rating no better than 3
- A provider in financial special measures will score a 4 overall
- A provider without an agreed control total can score no better than a 3 for a planned deficit or 2 for a planned surplus.

The Trust is currently at level 3, primarily reflecting our assets and liabilities from our two PFI funded hospital sites.

As part of the CQC inspection in 2018, the Trust was also assessed for Use of Resources by NHS Improvement and was rated as "Good" for the way in which it effectively and efficiently utilises its resources.

Economy, efficiency and effectiveness

The Trust utilises a range of benchmarking to ensure it is operating effectively, including the Model Hospital, Carter Metrics and Reference Costs, which are reviewed by the Finance and Performance Committee and support the development of improvement plans.

4.6 Information governance

Information Governance is the standards and processes for ensuring that organisations comply with the laws and regulations regarding handling and dealing with personal information. The Trust has clear policies and processes in place to ensure that information, including patient information, is handled in a confidential and secure manner.

The Data Security and Protection Toolkit (DSPT) is the successor framework to the IG Toolkit and is an online tool that enables organisations to measure their performance against data security and information governance requirements which reflect updated legal obligations and Department of Health and Social Care policy. All organisations that have access to NHS patient information must provide assurances that they are practising good Information Governance and use the Data Security and Protection Toolkit to evidence this by the publication of annual assessments.

St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust Information Governance Assessment Report submission for 2018/19 was rated as meeting the required standards as stipulated in the Data Security and Protection Toolkit. This represents a consistent position based on last year's score and means that the Trust is compliant in all sections of the DSP Toolkit.

This submission was audited by Mersey Internal Audit Agency (MIAA) and the Trust has maintained its assurance level of “Significant/Substantial Assurance” for the 7th year running, which demonstrates the Trust’s commitment to protecting the information it holds and uses.

The Trust continues to enhance its Information Governance Framework led by the Head of Information Governance, Quality Assurance and Data Protection Officer. The Information Governance Steering Group (IGSG) is a standing committee accountable to the Trust Risk Management Council and, ultimately, the Trust Board. Its main purpose is to support and drive the Information Governance agenda and provide the Trust Board with the assurance that effective Information Governance best practice mechanisms are in place within the Trust.

This year has seen the IGSG address two major changes which have transformed the Information Governance landscape. One of these has been the introduction of the new DSP Toolkit which has been described above, and the other was the introduction of the General Data Protection Regulations (GDPR) which came into force in May 2018. The IGSG monitored the detailed implementation action plans and ensured that key milestone targets were achieved.

The Trust’s Caldicott Guardian is the designated individual who is responsible for ensuring confidentiality of personal information. The Trust also has a Senior Information Risk Owner (SIRO), who is responsible for reviewing and reporting on the management of information risk to the Trust Board. The SIRO is supported by a network of Information Asset Owners (IAOs) and Information Asset Administrators (IAAs) who ensure that any identified information risks are appropriately managed in line with the Trust’s Risk Management Policy. The Data Protection Officer, Senior Information Risk Owner and Caldicott Guardian are appropriately qualified, trained, registered and accredited.

The Trust has a duty to report any incident regarding breaches of the Data Protection Act to the Information Commissioner’s Office (ICO) and during 2018/19 there were three incidents. Two of these incidents have been closed by the Information Commissioner’s Office with no actions taken against the Trust. The Trust has taken action to minimise the likelihood of any reoccurrence. The remaining incident remains open and the Trust is liaising with the ICO regarding this matter.

4.7 Annual Quality Account

The Directors are required under the Health Act 2009 and the National Health Service (Quality Accounts) Regulations 2010 (as amended) to prepare Quality Accounts for each financial year.

The Trust continues to be committed to ensuring accurate and up-to-date information is available to communicate effectively with GPs and others involved in delivering care to patients. Good quality information underpins effective delivery of patient care and supports better decision-making, which is essential for delivering improvements.

Data quality is fully embedded across the organisation, with robust governance arrangements in place to ensure the effective management of this process. Audit outcomes are monitored to ensure that the Trust continues to maintain performance in line with national standards. The data quality work plan is reviewed on an annual basis ensuring any new requirements are reflected in the plan.

The standard national data quality items that are routinely monitored are as follows:-

- Blank/invalid NHS number
- Unknown or dummy practice codes
- Blank or invalid registered GP practice
- Patient postcode

The Trust has implemented a new Patient Administration System (Medway) which has the functionality to allow for National Spine integration, giving users the ability to update patient details from national records using the NHS number as a unique identifier.

The Medway configuration restricts the options available to users. Validation of this work is on-going and will form part of the data quality work plan for 2019/20.

The Quality Committee provides oversight to ensure that the Trust produces the annual Quality Account for presentation to the appropriate Local Authority Overview and Scrutiny Committees established to review and analyse decisions which affect their residents. The annual Quality Account is audited and the 2018/19 account will be published in June 2019.

Sustainable Development – UKCP18 (Climate Projections risk assessments and management plan)

The Trust has undertaken risk assessments and has a sustainable development management plan in place which takes account of UK Climate Projections 2018 (UKCP18). The Trust ensures that its obligations under the Climate Change Act and the Adaption Reporting requirements are complied with.

The Trust recognises the important relationship between public health and the environment. Using the available financial, social and environmental resources, the Trust is striving to continually improve health and wellbeing in the community, deliver high quality care and minimise the impact its services have on the environment. The Trust acknowledges and fully embraces its responsibility to lead change and secure a sustainable future for its hospitals, public health and the social care system.

The Trust has published and is actively working to deliver its Sustainable Development Management Plan which is available at <http://www.sthk.nhs.uk/about/trust-publications/sustainable-development-management-plan>. This plan provides a proactive and systematic framework to encourage an organisational culture that supports and inspires innovative decisions, policies and actions that enable individuals, departments and partner organisations to promote and progress the Trust's sustainability agenda.

The Trust works closely with a wide range of stakeholders to ensure the aims and objectives of the Sustainable Development Plan are reflected in those of partner organisations. Examples of this are highlighted in the annual sustainability report which can be accessed via the link above.

The Trust's Sustainability Action Group meets bi-monthly to share sustainable practice, explore opportunities for savings and implement initiatives that promote sustainable development. Agenda items include a wide range of projects including, procurement of goods ranging from food, to pathology equipment, packaging, waste disposal, energy management, reducing carbon emissions and community projects.

Considerable progress has been made this year with the Trust's CO₂e emissions target. This year, the Trust installed a 1.2MWe Combined Heat and Power unit and a Flu-Ace heat recovery system which together prevents 3,600 Tonnes of carbon from being emitted annually. This helps the Trust towards its target of 50,443T of CO₂e by 2020 to comply with the 2008 Climate Change Act. The CHP and Flu-Ace system has also reduced the Trust's electricity consumption by 791,580kWh per month on average.

The Trust is actively pursuing targets across its key components, which include energy (21%), medical equipment (19%), paper products (12%), and waste disposal (6%).

This year, Warpit was introduced into the organisation. This is a computer based system that allows the Trust to distribute and recycle surplus or redundant resources within the organisation. This includes items such as surplus paper, stationary and items of furniture that are no longer needed. So far, the system has stopped 1516kg of waste going to landfill, saving the Trust over £3,200.

4.8 Review of effectiveness

Annual meeting effectiveness review

Each year, the Board and each of its Committees undertakes an effectiveness review each comprising of:

- A review by the Chair and lead Director
- A review of the meeting structure, membership and reporting arrangements
- A review of attendance
- Feedback from members
- Annual review of the Terms of Reference and work plan

The conclusion of the reviews, reported to the Audit Committee is that the purpose, remit and organisation of the Trust Board and its Committees remains appropriate and provides the necessary assurance that the Trust is effectively and appropriately managed. The review is also used to inform a skills audit, succession planning and the future Board development priorities.

As Accountable Officer, I have responsibility for reviewing the effectiveness of the system of internal control. My review of the effectiveness of the system of internal control is informed by the work of the internal auditors, clinical audit and the executive managers and clinical leads within the NHS Trust that have responsibility for the development and maintenance of the internal control framework.

I have drawn on the information provided in this annual report and other performance information available to me. My review is also informed by comments made by the external auditors in their management letter and other reports. I have been advised on the implications of the result of my review of the effectiveness of the system of internal control by the Board, the audit committee, finance and performance committee, and the quality committee and a plan to address weaknesses and ensure continuous improvement of the system is in place.

4.9 Conclusion

There are no significant internal control issues have been identified or reported in the annual governance statement for 2018/19.

Signed

Ann Marr

Ann Marr
Chief Executive
Date: 22nd May 2019

Accountability Report signed

Ann Marr

Ann Marr
Chief Executive
Date: 22nd May 2019



Section 3

Remuneration and Staff Report

This section provides the reader with information on the staff within the Trust and where further workforce data can be found within the financial statements.

5 The Trust's approach to its workforce and staffing

The HR & Workforce Strategy supports the Trust's vision by developing a management culture and style that:

- Empowers staff, builds teams and recognises and nurtures talent through learning and development
- Is open and honest with staff, and provides support throughout organisational change and invests in staff health and wellbeing
- Promotes standards of behaviour that encourage a culture of caring, kindness and mutual respect.

5.1 Trust employees

At the end of 2018/19, the Trust directly employed over five thousand FTE staff of which 42% are doctors and nurses; 35% are clinical support staff; and the remaining 33% are non-clinical support staff.

Turnover of staff is circa 9.99% which has decreased since 2017/18, reflecting the significant work that has been undertaken to improve recruitment and retention despite the challenges of national staff shortages for specialist healthcare staff. There are variations in turnover rates between disciplines, and significant recruitment challenges exist for some medical specialties, nursing and scientific staff.

The number of senior managers employed by the Trust at 31st March 2019 was 33 (27.3 FTE) including all Directors who attend the Trust Board and other senior managers at the Trust who have responsibility for controlling major activities and delivering statutory responsibilities e.g. Chief Pharmacist. All the senior managers are employed on NHS Agenda for Change (AFC) or the national Very Senior Manager (VSM) pay and contractual conditions.

Staff Numbers 31st March 2019	Male		Female		All Staff	
	Headcount	FTE	Headcount	FTE	Headcount	FTE
Directors	3	2.90	6	5.80	9	8.80
Non-Executive Directors	4	1.00	2	0.40	6	1.40
Other Senior Managers (AFC 8D and above)	12	11.10	6	6.00	18	17.10
All other staff	944	893.85	4670	4000.64	5614	4894.49
Total	963	908.75	4684	4012.84	5647	4921.59

The above table includes all staff on the Trust's payroll except; temporary staff (including agency and bank staff), junior doctors in training recharged from other payrolls and staff recharged from other organisations. This information is a snap shot rather than the average across the year.

81.5% of the workforce is female.

Information on 2018/19 staff costs and average FTE's is provided in the tables below:

Staff costs

	Permanent	Other	2018/19	2017/18
	£000	£000	Total	Total
			£000	£000
Salaries and wages	182,741	10,834	193,575	176,501
Social security costs	16,222	1,223	17,445	16,017
Apprenticeship levy	959	-	959	886
Employer's contributions to NHS pensions	19,748	1,489	21,237	19,380
Pension cost - other	45	-	45	18
Temporary staff	-	8,171	8,171	9,397
Total gross staff costs	219,715	21,717	241,432	222,199
Recoveries in respect of seconded staff	-	-	-	-
Total staff costs	219,715	21,717	241,432	222,199
Of which				
Costs capitalised as part of assets	34	3	37	67
Total staff costs net of capitalised costs	219,681	21,714	241,395	222,132

Average number of employees (WTE basis)

	Permanent	Other	2018/19	2017/18
	Number	Number	Total	Total
			Number	Number
Medical and dental	563	85	648	610
Administration and estates	1,144	81	1,225	1,124
Healthcare assistants and other support staff	790	164	954	918
Nursing, midwifery and health visiting staff	1,525	73	1,598	1,505
Scientific, therapeutic and technical staff	551	23	574	547
Healthcare science staff	313	-	313	308
Social care staff	3	-	3	3
Total average numbers	4,889	426	5,315	5,015
Of which:				
Number of employees (WTE) engaged on capital projects	1	-	1	1

The Trust annual sickness absence rate was 5.03% against a target of 4.7%. (percentage of days lost over days available).

5.2 Payments for staff and services

Trust expenditure in 2018/19 on consultancy is included under note 5 of the Annual Accounts.

Under HM Treasury guidance the Trust is required to disclose information about off-payroll engagements at a cost of more than £245 per day and lasting more than six months.

Total number of existing engagements as of 31st March 2019	4
Of which.....	
No. that have existed for less than one year	
No. that have existed for between 1-2 years	2
No that have existed for between 2-3 years	2
No that have existed for between 3-4 years	
No that have existed for 4 years or more	
Total number of new engagements, or those that reached six months in duration, between 1 April 2018 and 31 March 2019	0
Of which...	
No. assessed as caught by IR35	
No. assessed as not caught by IR35	
Of which...	
No engaged directly (via PSC contracted to the entity) and are on the departmental payroll	
No. of engagements reassessed for consistency/ assurance purposed during the year	
No. of engagements that saw a change to IR35 status following the consistency review	

There were no off-payroll engagements relating to the Trust's Executive Directors.

Reporting of compensation schemes and exit packages 2018/19

The figures below relate to administrative staff that transferred to the Trust as part of a major contract to be the Lead Employer for Junior Doctors in training and were funded by Health Education England (HEE).

Exit package cost band (including any special payment element)	Number of compulsory redundancies Number	Number of other departures agreed Number	Total number of exit packages Number
<£10,000	4	-	4
£10,000 - £25,000	2	-	2
£25,001 - 50,000	4	-	4
£100,001 - £150,000	1	-	1
Total number of exit packages by type	11	-	11
Total cost (£)	<u>£315,000</u>	<u>£0</u>	<u>£315,000</u>

6 Fair Pay Disclosure

The Trust has made the annual disclosure of the relationship between the remuneration of the highest paid director and the median remuneration of the organisations workforce (attachment 1).



Attachment 1 – Pay Multiplier Annual Disclosure

Pay Multiplier Disclosure 2018/19

Year	2018 - 2019	2017 - 2018
Band of Highest Paid Directors' remuneration (£,000)	165 - 170	190 - 195
Median Total (£)	28,548	25,630
Ratio	5.87	7.51

Reporting bodies are required to disclose the relationship between the remuneration of the highest paid Director in their organisation and the median remuneration of the organisations workforce.

The banded remuneration of the highest paid Director in St Helens & Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust in the financial year 2018-2019 was £165,000 to £170,000. Based on the mid-point of the band, this was 5.87 times the median remuneration of the workforce, which was £28,548.

Total remuneration includes salary, non-consolidated performance related pay and benefits in kind. It does not include severance payments, employer pension contributions and the cash equivalent transfer value of pensions.

The Medical Director is the highest paid member of staff for 2018-2019 and the Acting Medical Director for 2017-2018.

The increase in median salary is attributed to the national pay deal awarded in 2018 for Agenda for Change staff.

In producing this information, the Trust has followed the Healthcare Financial Management Association (HFMA) Guidance on Pay Multiple Disclosures issued in 2013.

Attachment 2 – Directors Remuneration Report

Salaries and Allowances, Table 1: Single Total figure table

	2018-19						
	Salary (See note below table) (bands of £5,000) £000	Other Remuneration (See note below table) (bands of £5,000) £000	Expense Payments (taxable) total to nearest £100	Performance pay and bonuses (bands of £5,000) £000	Long term performance pay and bonuses (bands of £5,000) £000	All pension-related benefits (See note below table) (bands of £2,500) £000	Total (bands of £5,000) £000
Mr R Fraser, Chairman <i>(Started 1 May 2014, 2nd term of office, ends 30th April 2020)</i>	20-25	0	0	0	0	0	20-25
Ms AM Marr, Chief Executive	110 -115	0	0	0	0	0	110-115
Mrs AM Stretch, Director of Human Resources & Deputy Chief Executive	130-135	0	900	0	0	0	130-135
Mr N Khashu, Director of Finance and Information	130-135	0	100	0	0	0	130-135
Professor K Hardy, Medical Director	35-40	95-100	0	0	0	0	135-140
Mrs S Redfern, Director of Nursing, Midwifery & Governance	110-115	0	0	0	0	0	110-115
Mr D Graham, Non-Executive Director <i>(Left 31st August 2018)</i>	0-5	0	300	0	0	0	0-5
Mr D Mahony, Non -Executive Director <i>(Started 1 August 2012, 3rd term of office, ends 31st July 2019)</i>	5-10	0	1,200	0	0	0	5-10
Ms S Rai, Non-Executive Director <i>(Started 26 September 2012, 3rd term of office, ends 25th September 2019)</i>	5-10	0	800	0	0	0	5-10
Mr G Marcall, Non-Executive Director <i>(Left 31st December 2017)</i>							
Mrs V Davies, Non-Executive Director <i>(Started 6th July 2017, 1st term of office, two-year term, ends 5th July 2019)</i>	5-10	0	1,000	0	0	0	5-10
Mr J Kozer, Non-Executive Director <i>(Started 1st January 2018, 1st term of office, three-year term, ends 31st December 2021)</i>	5-10	0	1,600	0	0	0	5-10
Mr P Growney, Non-Executive Director <i>(Started 1st September 2018, 1st term of office, two-year term, ends 31st August 2020)</i>	0-5	0	0	0	0	0	0-5
Mrs J Quinn, Associate Non-Executive Director <i>(Started 1st September 2018, 1st term of office, two-year term, ends 31st August 2020)</i>	0-5	0	0	0	0	0	0-5

Notes:

In the above table only the columns for "salary" and "other remuneration" are deemed to be salary related.

For the purposes of this exercise the pension-related benefits are calculated using a national standard formula and effectively reflect the real increase in pension at age 60 in 2018/19 multiplied by a valuation factor of 20 plus the real increase in lump sum at age 60 in 2018/19. The resultant figure represents an estimate of the lifetime benefit of the annual increase. Please note that these figures exclude the estimated impact of employee's own contributions unlike in the pensions benefit table which include the impact of both employee and employer contributions.

The figures in the above table will include all payments in the year including any arrears paid. Also where a director was not a director for all year then only the remuneration for that period the director was in post would be disclosed. This may lead to different from figures stated under the pay multiples disclosure.

The Trust Board oversees the running and direction of the Trust and is accountable for financial and operational performance. The Chair and five non-Executive Directors are initially appointed for a varying terms by the Secretary of State for Health and can be reappointed for further terms. The Chief Executive post is a standard NHS contract with no time element included and is reviewed by the Trust's Remuneration Committee on an annual basis. In attendance at this committee is the Chairman, Chief Executive and at least two non-

2017-18						
Salary (See note below table)	Other Remuneration (See note below table)	Expense Payments	Performance pay and bonuses	Long term performance pay and bonuses	All pension- related benefits (See note below table)	Total
(bands of £5,000) £000	(bands of £5,000) £000	(taxable) total to nearest £100	(bands of £5,000) £000	(bands of £5,000) £000	(bands of £2,500) £000	(bands of £5,000) £000
20-25	0	0	0	0	0	20-25
185 -190	0	0	0	0	45-47.5	230-235
125-130	0	0	0	0	107.5-110	235-240
125-130	0	0	0	0	57.5-60	185 - 190
25-30	175-180	0	0	0	27.5-30	230 - 235
105 -110	0	0	0	0	55-57.5	165-170
5-10	0	0	0	0	0	5-10
5-10	0	900	0	0	0	5-10
5-10	0	0	0	0	0	5-10
0-5	0	2,000	0	0	0	5-10
0-5	0	200	0	0	0	0-5
0-5	0	0	0	0	0	0-5

Executive Directors, except when the CEO's salary is discussed. The Human Resources Director also serves the Remuneration Committee except when the Human Resources Director's remuneration is discussed. The Finance Director, Human Resources Director and Nursing Director posts are substantive appointments. Along with the Chief Executive their posts would be subject to national competition if they became vacant. The Medical Director is appointed from within the Trust consultant body on a fixed-term contract.

In respect of pay awards for Executive Directors, these are made in line with Department of Health guidance. The Trust has a robust appraisal process in place for Executive Directors but does not operate a performance-related pay framework. All the Trust Executive Directors are employed on a full-time substantive contract with a 6 month contract termination notice period either side. There have been no significant awards made to past Executive Directors for early terminations of contract. None of the directors were remunerated in an off-payroll arrangement.

The Board Director's interests are published annually on the Trust's website.

Please note that elements of the Remuneration Report are subject to audit, namely the salary and pension entitlements of senior managers (ie. the Board), compensation paid to former directors, details of amounts payable to third parties for the services of a director (if made) and the median remuneration of the Trust's staff and the ratio between this and the mid-point of the banded remuneration of the highest paid director.

Attachment 3 – Pension Benefits

	Real increase/ (decrease) in pension at pensionable age (bands of £2,500) £000	Real increase/ (decrease) in lump sum at pensionable age related to real increase/ (decrease) in pension (bands of £2,500) £000	Total accrued pension at pensionable age at 31 March 2019 (bands of £5,000) £000	Lump sum at age 60 related to accrued pension at 31 March 2019 £000	Cash Equivalent Transfer Value at 31 March 2019 £000	Cash Equivalent Transfer Value at 31 March 2018 £000	Real increase/ (decrease) in Cash Equivalent Transfer Value £000	Employers Contribution to Stakeholder Pension £000
Ms AM Marr, Chief Executive						2,011		0
Mrs AM Stretch, Director of Human Resources & Deputy Chief Executive	0	0	55 - 60	145 - 150	1,169	1,039	80	0
Mr N Khashu, Director of Finance	0 - 2.5	0	35 - 40	80 - 85	570	482	55	0
Professor K Hardy, Medical Director						1,407		0
Mrs S Redfern, Director of Nursing, Midwifery & Governance	0	0	50 - 55	160 - 165	1,336	1,198	88	0

Please note that the above information has been provided by the NHS Business Services Agency - Pensions Division. The Trust's accounting policy on pensions is shown in Note 7.3 of the Trust's published accounts.

As Non-Executive members do not receive pensionable remuneration, there will be no entries in respect of pensions for Non-Executive members.

A Cash Equivalent Transfer Value (CETV) is the actuarially assessed capital value of the pension scheme benefits accrued by a member at a particular point in time. The benefits valued are the member's accrued benefits and any contingent spouse's (or other allowable beneficiary's) pension payable from the scheme. CETVs are calculated in accordance with SI 2008 No.1050 Occupational Pension Schemes (Transfer Values) Regulations 200823.

Real Increase in CETV - This reflects the increase in CETV effectively funded by the employer. It does not include the increase in accrued pension due to inflation, contributions paid by the employee (including the value of any benefits transferred from another scheme or arrangement) and uses common market valuation factors for the start and end of the period.



Annual Accounts 2018-19





Contents

GLOSSARY OF TERMS AND ABBREVIATIONS	4
DIRECTORS' STATEMENTS	
Statement of the Chief Executive's responsibilities as the Accountable Officer of the Trust	5
Statement of the Directors' responsibilities in respect of the accounts	6
INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT TO THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS OF THE ST HELENS & KNOWSLEY TEACHING HOSPITALS NHS TRUST	7
FOREWORD TO THE ACCOUNTS	12
STATEMENT OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME	13
STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION	14
STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN EQUITY	15
STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS	16
NOTES TO THE ACCOUNTS:	
1. Accounting policies and other information	17
2. Operating income from patient care activities	32
3. Other operating income	33
4. Fees and charges	33
5. Operating expenses	34
6. Impairment of assets	35
7. Employee benefits	36
8. Pension costs	37
9. Operating leases	38
10. Finance income	38
11. Finance expenditure	39
12. Intangible assets	40
13. Property, plant and equipment	41
14. Donations of property, plant and equipment	43
15. Revaluations of property, plant and equipment	43
16. Inventories	44
17. Trade receivables and other receivables	44
18. Cash and cash equivalents movements	45
19. Trade and other payables	46
20. Other liabilities	47
21. Borrowings	47
22. Finance leases	48
23. Provisions for liabilities and charges	50
24. Contingent assets and liabilities	50
25. Contractual capital commitments	51
26. Other financial commitments	51
27. On-SoFP PFI arrangements (additional information)	51
28. Financial instruments	53
29. Losses and special payments	55
30. Initial application of new standards (IFRS 9 AND IFRS 15)	56
31. Related parties	57
32. Events after the reporting date	57
33. Better payment practice code	58
34. External financing	58
35. Capital resource limit	58
36. Breakeven financial duty performance	59
37. Breakeven duty rolling assessment	59

GLOSSARY OF TERMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

CCG	Clinical Commissioning Group
CQUIN	Commissioning for Quality and Innovation schemes
Current assets/liabilities	Assets or liabilities due to be received/paid over within one year of the SOFP date
DHSC	Department of Health and Social Care
FReM	Financial Reporting Manual
GAM	Group Accounting Manual (of the DHSC)
HMRC	Her Majesty's Revenue and Customs
IAS	International Accounting Standard
IFRIC	International Financial Reporting Interpretations Committee
IFRS	International Financial Reporting Standards
MEA	Modern equivalent asset basis, a basis on which to value land and property assets
Non-current assets/liabilities	Assets or liabilities due to be received/paid over after one year from the SOFP date. In terms of property, plant, equipment and intangible assets this would indicate assets from which would ensue a financial benefit beyond one year
Payables	Amounts owed to suppliers and other organisations, etc. (creditors)
PDC	Public dividend capital
PDC dividend	Public dividend capital dividend payable by the Trust to the Department of Health, based on 3.5% of the Trust's net relevant assets
PFI	Private Finance Initiative
PPE	Property, plant and equipment
Receivables	Amounts owed by customers, etc. (debtors)
R&D	Research and development
Statement of Changes in Equity (SOCIE)	Formerly known under UK GAAP as Movements on Reserves
Statement of Comprehensive Income (SOCI)	A combination of the Income and Expenditure Account and Statement of Total Recognised Gains and Losses shown under UK GAAP
Statement of Financial Position (SOFP)	Formerly known under UK GAAP as the Balance Sheet
TFA	Tripartite Formal Agreement
UK GAAP	Generally Accepted Accounting Practice in the United Kingdom

Statement of the Chief Executive's responsibilities as the Accountable Officer of the Trust

The Chief Executive of NHS Improvement, in exercise of powers conferred on the NHS Trust Development Authority, has designated that the Chief Executive should be the Accountable Officer of the Trust. The relevant responsibilities of Accountable Officers are set out in the NHS Trust Accountable Officer Memorandum. These include ensuring that:

- there are effective management systems in place to safeguard public funds and assets and assist in the implementation of corporate governance;
- value for money is achieved from the resources available to the Trust;
- the expenditure and income of the Trust has been applied to the purposes intended by Parliament and conform to the authorities which govern them;
- effective and sound financial management systems are in place; and
- annual statutory accounts are prepared in a format directed by the Secretary of State to give a true and fair view of the state of affairs as at the end of the financial year and the income and expenditure, recognised gains and losses and cash flows for the year.

To the best of my knowledge and belief, I have properly discharged the responsibilities set out in my letter of appointment as an Accountable Officer.

Ann Marr

Ms A M Marr
Chief Executive

Date: 22nd May 2019

Statement of the Directors' responsibilities in respect of the accounts

The directors are required under the National Health Service Act 2006 to prepare accounts for each financial year. The Secretary of State, with the approval of HM Treasury, directs that these accounts give a true and fair view of the state of affairs of the Trust and of the income and expenditure, recognised gains and losses and cash flows for the year. In preparing those accounts, the directors are required to:

- apply on a consistent basis accounting policies laid down by the Secretary of State with the approval of the Treasury;
- make judgements and estimates which are reasonable and prudent;
- state whether applicable accounting standards have been followed, subject to any material departures disclosed and explained in the accounts.

The directors are responsible for keeping proper accounting records which disclose with reasonable accuracy at any time the financial position of the Trust and to enable them to ensure that the accounts comply with requirements outlined in the above mentioned direction of the Secretary of State. They are also responsible for safeguarding the assets of the Trust and hence for taking reasonable steps for the prevention and detection of fraud and other irregularities.

The directors confirm to the best of their knowledge and belief they have complied with the above requirements in preparing the accounts.

The directors confirm that the annual report and accounts, taken as a whole, is fair, balanced and understandable and provides the information necessary for patients, regulators and stakeholders to assess the NHS Trust's performance, business model and strategy.

By order of the Board

Ann Marr

Ms A M Marr
Chief Executive
22nd May 2019

Nik Khashu

Mr N Khashu
Director of Finance
22nd May 2019

Independent auditor's report to the Directors of St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust

Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements

Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust (the 'Trust') for the year ended 31 March 2019, which comprise the Statement of Comprehensive Income, the Statement of Financial Position, the Statement of Changes in Taxpayers Equity, the Statement of Cash Flows and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies. The financial reporting framework that has been applied in their preparation is applicable law and International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs) as adopted by the European Union, and as interpreted and adapted by the Department of Health and Social Care Group Accounting Manual 2018-19.

In our opinion the financial statements:

- give a true and fair view of the financial position of the Trust as at 31 March 2019 and of its expenditure and income for the year then ended; and
- have been properly prepared in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs) as adopted by the European Union, as interpreted and adapted by the Department of Health and Social Care Group Accounting Manual 2018-19; and
- have been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the National Health Service Act 2006.

Basis for opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (UK) (ISAs (UK)) and applicable law. Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the 'Auditor's responsibilities for the audit of the financial statements' section of our report. We are independent of the Trust in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements in the UK, including the FRC's Ethical Standard, and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Conclusions relating to going concern

We have nothing to report in respect of the following matters in relation to which the ISAs (UK) require us to report to you where:

- the Directors' use of the going concern basis of accounting in the preparation of the financial statements is not appropriate; or
- the Directors have not disclosed in the financial statements any identified material uncertainties that may cast significant doubt about the Trust's ability to continue to adopt the going concern basis of accounting for a period of at least twelve months from the date when the financial statements are authorised for issue.

Other information

The Directors are responsible for the other information. The other information comprises the information included in the Annual Report, other than the financial statements and our auditor's report thereon. Our opinion on the financial statements does not cover the other information and, except to the extent otherwise explicitly stated in our report, we do not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the financial statements, our responsibility is to read the other information and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the financial statements or our knowledge obtained in the audit or otherwise appears to be materially misstated. If we identify such material inconsistencies or apparent material misstatements, we are required to determine whether there is a material misstatement in the financial statements or a material misstatement of the other information. If, based on the work we have performed, we conclude that there is a material misstatement of the other information, we are required to report that fact.

We have nothing to report in this regard.

Other information we are required to report on by exception under the Code of Audit Practice

Under the Code of Audit Practice published by the National Audit Office on behalf of the Comptroller and Auditor General (the Code of Audit Practice) we are required to consider whether the Annual Governance Statement does not comply with the guidance issued by NHS Improvement or is misleading or inconsistent with the information of which we are aware from our audit. We are not required to consider whether the Annual Governance Statement addresses all risks and controls or that risks are satisfactorily addressed by internal controls.

We have nothing to report in this regard.

Opinion on other matters required by the Code of Audit Practice

In our opinion:

- the parts of the Remuneration and Staff Report to be audited have been properly prepared in accordance with IFRSs as adopted by the European Union, as interpreted and adapted by the Department of Health and Social Care Group Accounting Manual 2018-19 and the requirements of the National Health Service Act 2006; and
- based on the work undertaken in the course of the audit of the financial statements and our knowledge of the Trust gained through our work in relation to the Trust's arrangements for securing economy, efficiency and effectiveness in its use of resources, the other information published together with the financial statements in the Annual Report for the financial year for which the financial statements are prepared is consistent with the financial statements.

Matters on which we are required to report by exception

Under the Code of Audit Practice, we are required to report to you if:

- we issue a report in the public interest under Section 24 of the Local Audit and Accountability Act 2014 in the course of, or at the conclusion of the audit; or
- we refer a matter to the Secretary of State under Section 30 of the Local Audit and Accountability Act 2014 because we have reason to believe that the Trust, or an officer of the Trust, is about to make, or has made, a decision which involves or would involve the body incurring unlawful expenditure, or is about to take, or has begun to take a course of action which, if followed to its conclusion, would be unlawful and likely to cause a loss or deficiency; or
- we make a written recommendation to the Trust under Section 24 of the Local Audit and Accountability Act 2014 in the course of, or at the conclusion of the audit.

We have nothing to report in respect of the above matters.

Responsibilities of the Directors and Those Charged with Governance for the financial statements

As explained more fully in the Statement of Director's Responsibilities set out on page 6, the Directors are responsible for the preparation of the financial statements in the form and on the basis set out in the Accounts Directions, for being satisfied that they give a true and fair view, and for such internal control as the Directors determine is necessary to enable the preparation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

In preparing the financial statements, the Directors are responsible for assessing the Trust's ability to continue as a going concern, disclosing, as applicable, matters related to going concern and using the going concern basis of accounting unless they have been informed by the relevant national body of the intention to dissolve the Trust without the transfer of its services to another public sector entity. The Audit Committee is those charged with governance. Those charged with governance are responsible for overseeing the Trust's financial reporting process.

Auditor's responsibilities for the audit of the financial statements

Our objectives are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor's report that includes our opinion. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance, but is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with ISAs (UK) will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. Misstatements can arise from fraud or error and are considered material if, individually or in the aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of these financial statements.

A further description of our responsibilities for the audit of the financial statements is located on the Financial Reporting Council's website at: www.frc.org.uk/auditorsresponsibilities. This description forms part of our auditor's report.

Report on other legal and regulatory requirements – Conclusion on the Trust's arrangements for securing economy, efficiency and effectiveness in its use of resources

Matters on which we are required to report by exception - Trust's arrangements for securing economy, efficiency and effectiveness in its use of resources

Under the Code of Audit Practice, we are required to report to you if, in our opinion we have not been able to satisfy ourselves that the Trust has made proper arrangements for securing economy, efficiency and effectiveness in its use of resources for the year ended 31 March 2019.

We have nothing to report in respect of the above matter.

Responsibilities of the Accountable Officer

As explained in the Statement of the Chief Executive's Responsibilities, as the Accountable Officer of the Trust, the Accountable Officer is responsible for putting in place proper arrangements for securing economy, efficiency and effectiveness in the use of the Trust's resources.

Auditor's responsibilities for the review of the Trust's arrangements for securing economy, efficiency and effectiveness in its use of resources

We are required under Section 21(1)(c) and Schedule 13 paragraph 10(a) of the Local Audit and Accountability Act 2014 to be satisfied that the Trust has made proper arrangements for securing economy, efficiency and effectiveness in its use of resources and to report where we have not been able to satisfy ourselves that it has done so. We are not required to consider, nor have we considered, whether all aspects of the Trust's arrangements for securing economy, efficiency and effectiveness in its use of resources are operating effectively.

We have undertaken our review in accordance with the Code of Audit Practice, having regard to the guidance on the specified criterion issued by the Comptroller and Auditor General in November 2017, as to whether in all significant respects, the Trust had proper arrangements to ensure it took properly informed decisions and deployed resources to achieve planned and sustainable outcomes for taxpayers and local people. The Comptroller and Auditor General determined this criterion as that necessary for us to consider under the Code of Audit Practice in satisfying ourselves whether the Trust put in place proper arrangements for securing economy, efficiency and effectiveness in its use of resources for the year ended 31 March 2019, and to report by exception where we are not satisfied.

We planned our work in accordance with the Code of Audit Practice. Based on our risk assessment, we undertook such work as we considered necessary to be satisfied that the Trust has put in place proper arrangements for securing economy, efficiency and effectiveness in its use of resources.

Report on other legal and regulatory requirements – Certificate

We certify that we have completed the audit of the financial statements of St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospital NHS Trust in accordance with the requirements of the Local Audit and Accountability Act 2014 and the Code of Audit Practice.

Use of our report

This report is made solely to the Directors of the Trust, as a body, in accordance with Part 5 of the Local Audit and Accountability Act 2014. Our audit work has been undertaken so that we might state to the Trust's Directors those matters we are required to state to them in an auditor's report and for no other purpose. To the fullest extent permitted by law, we do not accept or assume responsibility to anyone other than the Trust and the Trust's Directors, as a body, for our audit work, for this report, or for the opinions we have formed.

John Farrar

John Farrar, Key Audit Partner
for and on behalf of Grant Thornton UK LLP, Local Auditor

4 Hardman Square
Spinningfields
Manchester, M3 3EB

24 May 2019



Foreword to the accounts

These accounts for the year ended 31 March 2019 have been prepared by the St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust under section 98(2) of the National Health Service Act 1977 (as amended by section 24(2), schedule 2 of the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990) in the form which the Secretary of State has, with the approval of the Treasury, directed.

Statement of Comprehensive Income

		2018/19	2017/18
	Note	£000	£000
Operating income from patient care activities	2	324,576	310,386
Other operating income	3	77,582	73,201
Operating expenses	5	(390,275)	(357,755)
Operating surplus/(deficit) from continuing operations		11,883	25,832
Finance income	10	227	86
Finance expenses	11	(16,974)	(16,290)
Net finance costs		(16,747)	(16,204)
Surplus / (deficit) for the year from continuing operations		(4,864)	9,628
Surplus / (deficit) for the year		(4,864)	9,628
Other comprehensive income			
Will not be reclassified to income and expenditure:			
Impairments and reversals	6	25	4,721
Total comprehensive income / (expense) for the period		(4,839)	14,349
Adjusted financial performance (control total basis):			
Surplus / (deficit) for the period		(4,864)	9,628
Remove net impairments not scoring to the Departmental expenditure limit		4,179	(4,822)
Remove I&E impact of capital grants and donations		88	195
Adjusted financial performance surplus / (deficit)		(597)	5,001

Statement of Financial Position

	Note	31 March 2019 £000	31 March 2018 £000
Non-current assets			
Intangible assets	12	925	1,435
Property, plant and equipment	13	258,868	261,236
Receivables	17	1,983	1,093
Total non-current assets		261,776	263,764
Current assets			
Inventories	16	3,650	3,660
Receivables	17	37,049	25,117
Cash and cash equivalents	18	5,109	11,661
Total current assets		45,808	40,438
Current liabilities			
Trade and other payables	19	(42,483)	(41,089)
Borrowings	21	(11,136)	(6,585)
Provisions	23	(350)	(398)
Other liabilities	20	(734)	(691)
Total current liabilities		(54,703)	(48,763)
Total assets less current liabilities		252,881	255,439
Non-current liabilities			
Borrowings	21	(254,437)	(252,869)
Provisions	23	(2,368)	(2,452)
Other liabilities	20	-	(27)
Total non-current liabilities		(256,805)	(255,348)
Total assets employed		(3,924)	91
Financed by			
Public dividend capital		66,630	65,806
Revaluation reserve		10,071	10,046
Income and expenditure reserve		(80,625)	(75,761)
Total taxpayers' equity		(3,924)	91

The notes on pages 17 to page 59 form part of these accounts.

Name Ms A M Marr
Position Chief Executive
Date 22nd May 2019

Statement of Changes in Equity for the year ended 31 March 2019

	Public dividend capital £000	Revaluation reserve £000	Income and expenditure reserve £000	Total £000
Taxpayers' equity at 1 April 2018 - brought forward	65,806	10,046	(75,761)	91
Surplus/(deficit) for the year	-	-	(4,864)	(4,864)
Impairments and reversals	-	25	-	25
Public dividend capital received	824	-	-	824
Taxpayers' equity at 31 March 2019	66,630	10,071	(80,625)	(3,924)

Statement of Changes in Equity for the year ended 31 March 2018

	Public dividend capital £000	Revaluation reserve £000	Income and expenditure reserve £000	Total £000
Taxpayers' equity at 1 April 2017 - brought forward	64,437	5,329	(85,393)	(15,627)
Surplus/(deficit) for the year	-	-	9,628	9,628
Impairments and reversals	-	4,721	-	4,721
Transfer to retained earnings on disposal of assets	-	(4)	4	-
Public dividend capital received	1,369	-	-	1,369
Taxpayers' equity at 31 March 2018	65,806	10,046	(75,761)	91

Information on reserves

Public dividend capital

Public dividend capital (PDC) is a type of public sector equity finance based on the excess of assets over liabilities at the time of establishment of the predecessor NHS organisation. Additional PDC may also be issued to trusts by the Department of Health and Social Care. A charge, reflecting the cost of capital utilised by the Trust, is payable to the Department of Health as the public dividend capital dividend.

Revaluation reserve

Increases in asset values arising from revaluations are recognised in the revaluation reserve, except where, and to the extent that, they reverse impairments previously recognised in operating expenses, in which case they are recognised in operating income. Subsequent downward movements in asset valuations are charged to the revaluation reserve to the extent that a previous gain was recognised unless the downward movement represents a clear consumption of economic benefit or a reduction in service potential.

Income and expenditure reserve

The balance of this reserve is the accumulated surpluses and deficits of the Trust.

Statement of Cash Flows

	Note	2018/19 £000	2017/18 £000
Cash flows from operating activities			
Operating surplus / (deficit)		11,883	25,832
Non-cash income and expense:			
Depreciation and amortisation	5	8,366	8,431
Net impairments	6	4,179	(4,822)
Income recognised in respect of capital donations	3	(69)	(125)
Amortisation of PFI deferred credit		(32)	(5)
(Increase) / decrease in receivables and other assets		(12,544)	(2,993)
(Increase) / decrease in inventories		10	328
Increase / (decrease) in payables and other liabilities		1,254	7,553
Increase / (decrease) in provisions		(134)	(233)
Net cash generated from / (used in) operating activities		12,913	33,966
Cash flows from investing activities			
Interest received		215	77
Purchase of intangible assets		(309)	(369)
Purchase of property, plant, equipment and investment property		(8,276)	(6,354)
Prepayment of PFI capital contributions		(1,096)	(830)
Net cash generated from / (used in) investing activities		(9,466)	(7,476)
Cash flows from financing activities			
Public dividend capital received		824	1,369
Movement on loans from the Department of Health and Social Care		11,499	2,580
Movement on other loans		496	1,612
Capital element of finance lease rental payments		(152)	(118)
Capital element of PFI, LIFT and other service concession payments		(5,698)	(5,792)
Interest on loans		(116)	(53)
Other interest		(7)	-
Interest paid on finance lease liabilities		(84)	(28)
Interest paid on PFI, LIFT and other service concession obligations		(16,761)	(16,176)
Net cash generated from / (used in) financing activities		(9,999)	(16,606)
Increase / (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents		(6,552)	9,884
Cash and cash equivalents at 1 April - brought forward		11,661	1,777
Cash and cash equivalents at 31 March	18.1	5,109	11,661

Notes to the Accounts

1 Accounting policies and other information

1.1 Basis of preparation

The Department of Health and Social Care has directed that the financial statements of the Trust shall meet the accounting requirements of the Department of Health and Social Care Group Accounting Manual (GAM), which shall be agreed with HM Treasury. Consequently, the following financial statements have been prepared in accordance with the GAM 2018/19 issued by the Department of Health and Social Care. The accounting policies contained in the GAM follow International Financial Reporting Standards to the extent that they are meaningful and appropriate to the NHS, as determined by HM Treasury, which is advised by the Financial Reporting Advisory Board. Where the GAM permits a choice of accounting policy, the accounting policy that is judged to be most appropriate to the particular circumstances of the Trust for the purpose of giving a true and fair view has been selected. The particular policies adopted are described below. These have been applied consistently in dealing with items considered material in relation to the accounts.

1.1.1 Accounting convention

These accounts have been prepared under the historical cost convention modified to account for the revaluation of property, plant and equipment, intangible assets, inventories and certain financial assets and financial liabilities.

1.2 Going concern

In terms of the sustainable provision of services, there has been no indication from the Department of Health that the Trust will not continue to be a going concern although the Trust has required working capital loans to meet its operational cash obligations. The Directors, having made appropriate enquiries, still have reasonable expectations that the Trust will have adequate resources to continue in operational existence for the foreseeable future. As directed by the 2018/19 GAM the Directors have prepared the financial statements on a going concern basis as they consider that the services currently provided by the Trust will continue to be provided in the foreseeable future. On this basis, the Trust has adopted the going concern basis for preparing the financial statements and has not included the adjustments that would result if it was unable to continue as a going concern. These accounts have been prepared on a going concern basis.

1.3 Critical judgements in applying accounting policies

The following are the judgements, apart from those involving estimations (see below) that management has made in the process of applying the Trust accounting policies and that have the most significant effect on the amounts recognised in the financial statements:

- The Trust's PFI scheme (including the main PFI and Managed Equipment Service) is deemed to fall on the statement of financial position as assessed independently under IFRIC12 on the basis that the asset is under the control of the Trust and all risks and rewards sit with the Trust. This is deemed to be a critical judgement that impacts on the financial statements. The Trust's PFI assets have also been valued using depreciated replacement cost excluding VAT. By excluding VAT the Trust is accurately reflecting the depreciated replacement cost as a replacement asset would also be funded by PFI and, by the nature of the contract, have VAT recovered. This valuation is the same methodology and assumptions as in the prior year.

1.3.1 Sources of estimation uncertainty

The following are assumptions about the future and other major sources of estimation uncertainty that have a significant risk of resulting in a material adjustment to the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities within the next financial year:

The only key areas of uncertainty, as at the statement of financial position sheet date, that have a significant risk of causing a material adjustment to the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities within the next financial year relate to provisions, ie. early retirement costs, permanent injury benefit awards, public and employer's liability claims and asset lives and valuation of property.

1.4. Revenue

1.4.1 Revenue from contracts with customers

Where income is derived from contracts with customers, it is accounted for under IFRS 15. The GAM expands the definition of a contract to include legislation and regulations which enables an entity to receive cash or another financial asset that is not classified as a tax by the Office of National Statistics (ONS). As directed by the GAM, the transition to IFRS 15 in 2018/19 has been completed in accordance with paragraph C3 (b) of the Standard: applying the Standard retrospectively but recognising the cumulative effects at the date of initial application (1 April 2018).

Revenue in respect of goods/services provided is recognised when (or as) performance obligations are satisfied by transferring promised goods/services to the customer and is measured at the amount of the transaction price allocated to those performance obligations. At the year end, the Trust accrues income relating to performance obligations satisfied in that year. Where the Trust's entitlement to consideration for those goods or services is unconditional a contract receivable will be recognised. Where entitlement to consideration is conditional on a further factor other than the passage of time, a contract asset will be recognised. Where consideration received or receivable relates to a performance obligation that is to be satisfied in a future period, the income is deferred and recognised as a contract liability.

The nature of the Trust's business is such that income is accrued over time and as such income is expected to be received within 30 days of raising a bill. Consequently, the introduction of IFRS has not materially impacted upon the Trust's revenue figures.

Revenue from NHS contracts

The main source of income for the Trust is contracts with commissioners for health care services. A performance obligation relating to delivery of a spell of health care is generally satisfied over time as healthcare is received and consumed simultaneously by the customer as the Trust performs it. The customer in such a contract is the commissioner, but the customer benefits as services are provided to their patient. Even where a contract could be broken down into separate performance obligations, healthcare generally aligns with paragraph 22(b) of the Standard entailing a delivery of a series of goods or services that are substantially the same and have a similar pattern of transfer. At the year end, the Trust accrues income relating to activity delivered in that year, where a patient care spell is incomplete.

Revenue is recognised to the extent that collection of consideration is probable. Where contract challenges from commissioners are expected to be upheld, the Trust reflects this in the transaction price and derecognises the relevant portion of income.

Where the Trust is aware of a penalty based on contractual performance, the Trust reflects this in the transaction price for its recognition of revenue. Revenue is reduced by the value of the penalty.

Revenue from research contracts

Where research contracts fall under IFRS 15, revenue is recognised as and when performance obligations are satisfied. For some contracts, it is assessed that the revenue project constitutes one performance obligation over the course of the multi-year contract. In these cases it is assessed that the Trust's interim performance does not create an asset with alternative use for the Trust, and the Trust has an enforceable right to payment for the performance completed to date. It is therefore considered that the performance obligation is satisfied over time, and the Trust recognises revenue each year over the course of the contract.

NHS injury cost recovery scheme

The Trust receives income under the NHS injury cost recovery scheme, designed to reclaim the cost of treating injured individuals to whom personal injury compensation has subsequently been paid, for instance by an insurer. The Trust recognises the income when it receives notification from the Department of Work and Pension's Compensation Recovery Unit, has completed the NHS2 form and confirmed there are no discrepancies with the treatment. The income is measured at the agreed tariff for the treatments provided to the injured individual, less an allowance for unsuccessful compensation claims and doubtful debts in line with IFRS 9 requirements of measuring expected credit losses over the lifetime of the asset.

1.4.2 Revenue grants and other contributions to expenditure

Government grants are grants from government bodies other than income from commissioners or trusts for the provision of services. Where a grant is used to fund revenue expenditure it is taken to the Statement of Comprehensive Income to match that expenditure.

The value of the benefit received when accessing funds from the the Government's apprenticeship service is recognised as income at the point of receipt of the training service. Where these funds are paid directly to an accredited training provider, the corresponding notional expense is also recognised at the point of recognition for the benefit.

1.4.3 Other income

Income from the sale of non-current assets is recognised only when all material conditions of sale have been met, and is measured as the sums due under the sale contract.

1.5 Expenditure on employee benefits

Short-term employee benefits

Salaries, wages and employment-related payments such as social security costs and the apprenticeship levy are recognised in the period in which the service is received from employees. The cost of annual leave entitlement earned but not taken by employees at the end of the period is recognised in the financial statements to the extent that employees are permitted to carry-forward leave into the following period.

Pension costs

NHS Pension Scheme

Past and present employees are covered by the provisions of the NHS Pension Scheme. The scheme is an unfunded, defined benefit scheme that covers NHS employers, general practices and other bodies, allowed under the direction of the Secretary of State, in England and Wales.

The scheme is not designed in a way that would enable employers to identify their share of the underlying scheme assets and liabilities. Therefore, the scheme is accounted for as though it is a defined contribution scheme.

Employer's pension cost contributions are charged to operating expenses as and when they become due.

Additional pension liabilities arising from early retirements are not funded by the scheme except where the retirement is due to ill-health. The full amount of the liability for the additional costs is charged to the operating expenses at the time the Trust commits itself to the retirement, regardless of the method of payment.

1.6 Expenditure on other goods and services

Expenditure on goods and services is recognised when, and to the extent that they have been received, and is measured at the fair value of those goods and services. Expenditure is recognised in operating expenses except where it results in the creation of a non-current asset such as property, plant and equipment.

1.7 Property, plant and equipment

1.7.1 Recognition

Property, plant and equipment is capitalised where:

- it is held for use in delivering services or for administrative purposes
- it is probable that future economic benefits will flow to, or service potential be provided to, the trust
- it is expected to be used for more than one financial year
- the cost of the item can be measured reliably
- the item has cost of at least £5,000, or
- collectively, a number of items have a cost of at least £5,000 and individually have cost of more than £250, where the assets are functionally interdependent, had broadly simultaneous purchase dates, are anticipated to have similar disposal dates and are under single managerial control.

Where a large asset, for example a building, includes a number of components with significantly different asset lives, eg, plant and equipment, then these components are treated as separate assets and depreciated over their own useful lives.

1.7.2 Measurement Valuation

All property, plant and equipment assets are measured initially at cost, representing the costs directly attributable to acquiring or constructing the asset and bringing it to the location and condition necessary for it to be capable of operating in the manner intended by management.

All assets are measured subsequently at valuation. Assets which are held for their service potential and are in use (ie operational assets used to deliver either front line services or back office functions) are measured at their current value in existing use. Assets that were most recently held for their service potential but are surplus with no plan to bring them back into use are measured at fair value where there are no restrictions on sale at the reporting date and where they do not meet the definitions of investment properties or assets held for sale.

Revaluations of property, plant and equipment are performed with sufficient regularity to ensure that carrying values are not materially different from those that would be determined at the end of the reporting period. Current values in existing use are determined as follows:

- Land and non-specialised buildings – market value for existing use
- Specialised buildings – depreciated replacement cost on a modern equivalent asset basis.

Assets held at depreciated replacement cost have been valued on an alternative site basis where this would meet the location requirements of the services being provided.

Properties in the course of construction for service or administration purposes are carried at cost, less any impairment loss. Cost includes professional fees and, where capitalised in accordance with IAS 23, borrowings costs. Assets are revalued and depreciation commences when the assets are brought into use.

IT equipment, transport equipment, furniture and fittings, and plant and machinery that are held for operational use are valued at depreciated historic cost where these assets have short useful lives or low values or both, as this is not considered to be materially different from current value in existing use.

Subsequent expenditure

Subsequent expenditure relating to an item of property, plant and equipment is recognised as an increase in the carrying amount of the asset when it is probable that additional future economic benefits or service potential deriving from the cost incurred to replace a component of such item will flow to the enterprise and the cost of the item can be determined reliably. Where a component of an asset is replaced, the cost of the replacement is capitalised if it meets the criteria for recognition above. The carrying amount of the part replaced is de-recognised. Other expenditure that does not generate additional future economic benefits or service potential, such as repairs and maintenance, is charged to the Statement of Comprehensive Income in the period in which it is incurred.

Depreciation

Items of property, plant and equipment are depreciated over their remaining useful lives in a manner consistent with the consumption of economic or service delivery benefits. Freehold land is considered to have an infinite life and is not depreciated.

Property, plant and equipment which has been reclassified as 'held for sale' cease to be depreciated upon the reclassification. Assets in the course of construction are not depreciated until the asset is brought into use or reverts to the Trust, respectively.

The Trust depreciates its buildings using information on value and asset lives provided by a professional estate valuer. The methodology for assessing lives used by the valuer tends to longer asset lives and assumes buildings are adequately maintained, that capital lifecycle maintenance costs are charged to revenue and that valuations are undertaken regularly. This methodology was accepted by the Trust when the construction of its new PFI buildings began in the last decade and has been used consistently since. The methodology was particularly apt for an organisation with PFI buildings where there is a contractual obligation to maintain such buildings. The methodology also has the advantage of being practical. In January 2019 RICS changed its guidance such that valuers are now advised to adopt a "shorter-life" approach to assessing building asset lives. The RICS guidance up to that point did not preclude the use of the methodology used by the Trust.

The Trust had a formal revaluation of its buildings as at 31 March 2019 and intend to use the revised asset lives from 1 April 2019. This means that capital lifecycle maintenance costs from 1 April 2019 will now be capitalised.

Revaluation gains and losses

Revaluation gains are recognised in the revaluation reserve, except where, and to the extent that, they reverse a revaluation decrease that has previously been recognised in operating expenses, in which case they are recognised in operating income.

Revaluation losses are charged to the revaluation reserve to the extent that there is an available balance for the asset concerned, and thereafter are charged to operating expenses.

Gains and losses recognised in the revaluation reserve are reported in the Statement of Comprehensive Income as an item of 'other comprehensive income'.

Impairments

In accordance with the GAM, impairments that arise from a clear consumption of economic benefits or of service potential in the asset are charged to operating expenses. A compensating transfer is made from the revaluation reserve to the income and expenditure reserve of an amount equal to the lower of (i) the impairment charged to operating expenses; and (ii) the balance in the revaluation reserve attributable to that asset before the impairment.

An impairment that arises from a clear consumption of economic benefit or of service potential is reversed when, and to the extent that, the circumstances that gave rise to the loss is reversed. Reversals are recognised in operating expenditure to the extent that the asset is restored to the carrying amount it would have had if the impairment had never been recognised. Any remaining reversal is recognised in the revaluation reserve. Where, at the time of the original impairment, a transfer was made from the revaluation reserve to the income and expenditure reserve, an amount is transferred back to the revaluation reserve when the impairment reversal is recognised. Other impairments are treated as revaluation losses. Reversals of 'other impairments' are treated as revaluation gains.

1.7.3 De-recognition

Assets intended for disposal are reclassified as 'held for sale' once all of the following criteria are met:

- the asset is available for immediate sale in its present condition subject only to terms which are usual and customary for such sales;
- the sale must be highly probable ie:
 - management are committed to a plan to sell the asset
 - an active programme has begun to find a buyer and complete the sale
 - the asset is being actively marketed at a reasonable price
 - the sale is expected to be completed within 12 months of the date of classification as 'held for sale' and
 - the actions needed to complete the plan indicate it is unlikely that the plan will be abandoned or significant changes made to it.

Following reclassification, the assets are measured at the lower of their existing carrying amount and their 'fair value less costs to sell'. Depreciation ceases to be charged. Assets are de-recognised when all material sale contract conditions have been met.

Property, plant and equipment which is to be scrapped or demolished does not qualify for recognition as 'held for sale' and instead is retained as an operational asset and the asset's useful life is adjusted. The asset is de-recognised when scrapping or demolition occurs.

1.7.4 Donated and grant funded assets

Donated and grant funded property, plant and equipment assets are capitalised at their fair value on receipt. The donation/grant is credited to income at the same time, unless the donor has imposed a condition that the future economic benefits embodied in the grant are to be consumed in a manner specified by the donor, in which case, the donation/grant is deferred within liabilities and is carried forward to future financial years to the extent that the condition has not yet been met.

The donated and grant funded assets are subsequently accounted for in the same manner as other items of property, plant and equipment.

1.7.5 Private Finance Initiative (PFI) transactions

PFI transactions which meet the IFRIC 12 definition of a service concession, as interpreted in HM Treasury's FReM, are accounted for as 'on-Statement of Financial Position' by the Trust. In accordance with IAS 17, the underlying assets are recognised as property, plant and equipment, together with an equivalent finance lease liability. Subsequently, the assets are accounted for as property, plant and equipment and/or intangible assets as appropriate.

The annual contract payments are apportioned between the repayment of the liability, a finance cost, the charges for services (shown under operating expenses) and lifecycle replacement of components of the asset. The element of the annual unitary payment increase due to cumulative indexation on finance costs and repayment of the liability is treated as contingent rent and is expensed as incurred.

The service charge is recognised in operating expenses and the finance cost is charged to finance costs in the Statement of Comprehensive Income.

Components of the asset replaced by the operator during the contract ('lifecycle replacement') are capitalised where they meet the NHS Trust's criteria for capital expenditure. They are capitalised at the time they are provided by the operator and are measured initially at their fair value. The element of the annual unitary payment allocated to lifecycle replacement is pre-determined for each year of the contract from the operator's planned programme of lifecycle replacement. Where the lifecycle component is provided earlier or later than expected, a short-term accrual or prepayment is recognised respectively. However, taking into account the Trust's valuer's approach to assessing asset lives of building assets (which assumes assets are being maintained to original standards), then it is more appropriate for the Trust to treat such expenditure on property assets as a charge to revenue as and when charged through the unitary payment (see next paragraph). With regard to the managed equipment service element of the PFI scheme, major lifecycle costs are capitalised.

Due to a recent change in RICS guidance which the Trust has applied from 1 April 2019 there has been a reduction on building asset lives that effectively will necessitate the capitalisation of building lifecycle costs. The impact of applying this in 2018/19 has been estimated not to be material.

1.7.6 Useful lives of property, plant and equipment

Useful lives reflect the total life of an asset and not the remaining life of an asset. The range of useful lives are shown in the table below:

	Min life Years	Max life Years
Buildings, excluding dwellings	3	64
Plant & machinery	4	15
Transport equipment	7	7
Information technology	5	8
Furniture & fittings	7	10

Finance-leased assets (including land) are depreciated over the shorter of the useful life or the lease term, unless the Trust expects to acquire the asset at the end of the lease term in which case the assets are depreciated in the same manner as owned assets above.

1.8 Intangible assets

1.8.1 Recognition

Intangible assets are non-monetary assets without physical substance which are capable of being sold separately from the rest of the Trust's business or which arise from contractual or other legal rights. They are recognised only where it is probable that future economic benefits will flow to, or service potential be provided to, the Trust and where the cost of the asset can be measured reliably.

Internally generated intangible assets

Internally generated goodwill, brands, mastheads, publishing titles, customer lists and similar items are not capitalised as intangible assets.

Expenditure on research is not capitalised.

Expenditure on development is capitalised only where all of the following can be demonstrated:

- the project is technically feasible to the point of completion and will result in an intangible asset for sale or use
- the Trust intends to complete the asset and sell or use it
- the Trust has the ability to sell or use the asset
- how the intangible asset will generate probable future economic or service delivery benefits, eg, the presence of a market for it or its output, or where it is to be used for internal use, the usefulness of the asset;
- adequate financial, technical and other resources are available to the Trust to complete the development and sell or use the asset and
- the Trust can measure reliably the expenses attributable to the asset during development.

Software

Software which is integral to the operation of hardware, eg an operating system, is capitalised as part of the relevant item of property, plant and equipment. Software which is not integral to the operation of hardware, eg application software, is capitalised as an intangible asset.

1.8.2 Measurement

Intangible assets are recognised initially at cost, comprising all directly attributable costs needed to create, produce and prepare the asset to the point that it is capable of operating in the manner intended by management.

Subsequently intangible assets are measured at current value in existing use. Where no active market exists, intangible assets are valued at the lower of depreciated replacement cost and the value in use where the asset is income generating. Revaluations gains and losses and impairments are treated in the same manner as for property, plant and equipment. An intangible asset which is surplus with no plan to bring it back into use is valued at fair value under IFRS 13, if it does not meet the requirements of IAS 40 or IFRS 5.

Intangible assets held for sale are measured at the lower of their carrying amount or "fair value less costs to sell".

Amortisation

Intangible assets are amortised over their expected useful lives in a manner consistent with the consumption of economic or service delivery benefits.

1.8.3 Useful economic life of intangible assets

Useful lives reflect the total life of an asset and not the remaining life of an asset. The range of useful lives are shown in the table below:

	Min life Years	Max life Years
Information technology	5	5
Software licences	5	5

1.9 Inventories

Inventories are valued at the lower of cost and net realisable value using the first-in first-out cost formula. This is considered to be a reasonable approximation to fair value due to the high turnover of stocks.

1.10 Cash and cash equivalents

Cash is cash in hand and deposits with any financial institution repayable without penalty on notice of not more than 24 hours. Cash equivalents are investments that mature in 3 months or less from the date of acquisition and that are readily convertible to known amounts of cash with insignificant risk of change in value.

In the Statement of Cash Flows, cash and cash equivalents are shown net of bank overdrafts that are repayable on demand and that form an integral part of the Trust's cash management. Cash, bank and overdraft balances are recorded at current values.

1.11 Financial assets and financial liabilities

1.11.1 Recognition

Financial assets and financial liabilities arise where the Trust is party to the contractual provisions of a financial instrument, and as a result has a legal right to receive or a legal obligation to pay cash or another financial instrument. The GAM expands the definition of a contract to include legislation and regulations which give rise to arrangements that in all other respects would be a financial instrument and do not give rise to transactions classified as a tax by ONS.

This includes the purchase or sale of non-financial items (such as goods or services), which are entered into in accordance with the Trust's normal purchase, sale or usage requirements and are recognised when, and to the extent which, performance occurs, ie, when receipt or delivery of the goods or services is made.

1.11.2 Classification and measurement

Financial assets and financial liabilities are initially measured at fair value plus or minus directly attributable transaction costs except where the asset or liability is not measured at fair value through income and expenditure. Fair value is taken as the transaction price, or otherwise determined by reference to quoted market prices or valuation techniques.

Financial assets or financial liabilities in respect of assets acquired or disposed of through finance leases are recognised and measured in accordance with the accounting policy for leases described below.

Financial assets are classified as subsequently measured at amortised cost.

Financial liabilities are classified as subsequently measured at amortised cost.

Financial assets and financial liabilities at amortised cost

Financial assets and financial liabilities at amortised cost are those held with the objective of collecting contractual cash flows and where cash flows are solely payments of principal and interest. This includes cash equivalents, contract and other receivables, trade and other payables, rights and obligations under lease arrangements and loans receivable and payable.

After initial recognition, these financial assets and financial liabilities are measured at amortised cost using the effective interest method less any impairment (for financial assets). The effective interest rate is the rate that exactly discounts estimated future cash payments or receipts through the expected life of the financial asset or financial liability to the gross carrying amount of a financial asset or to the amortised cost of a financial liability.

Interest revenue or expense is calculated by applying the effective interest rate to the gross carrying amount of a financial asset or amortised cost of a financial liability and recognised in the Statement of Comprehensive Income and a financing income or expense. In the case of loans held from the Department of Health and Social Care, the effective interest rate is the nominal rate of interest charged on the loan.

Impairment of financial assets

For all financial assets measured at amortised cost including lease receivables, contract receivables and contract assets, the Trust recognises an allowance for expected credit losses.

The Trust adopts the simplified approach to impairment for contract and other receivables, contract assets and lease receivables, measuring expected losses as at an amount equal to lifetime expected losses. For other financial assets, the loss allowance is initially measured at an amount equal to 12-month expected credit losses (stage 1) and subsequently at an amount equal to lifetime expected credit losses if the credit risk assessed for the financial asset significantly increases (stage 2).

Expected losses are charged to operating expenditure within the Statement of Comprehensive Income and reduce the net carrying value of the financial asset in the Statement of Financial Position.

1.11.3 Derecognition

Financial assets are de-recognised when the contractual rights to receive cash flows from the assets have expired or the Trust has transferred substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership.

Financial liabilities are de-recognised when the obligation is discharged, cancelled or expires.

1.12 Leases

Leases are classified as finance leases when substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership are transferred to the lessee. All other leases are classified as operating leases.

1.12.1 The Trust as lessee

Finance leases

Where substantially all risks and rewards of ownership of a leased asset are borne by the Trust, the asset is recorded as property, plant and equipment and a corresponding liability is recorded. The value at which both are recognised is the lower of the fair value of the asset or the present value of the minimum lease payments, discounted using the interest rate implicit in the lease.

The asset and liability are recognised at the commencement of the lease. Thereafter the asset is accounted for as an item of property plant and equipment.

The annual rental charge is split between the repayment of the liability and a finance cost so as to achieve a constant rate of finance over the life of the lease. The annual finance cost is charged to Finance Costs in the Statement of Comprehensive Income. The lease liability, is de-recognised when the liability is discharged, cancelled or expires.

Operating leases

Operating lease payments are recognised as an expense on a straight-line basis over the lease term. Lease incentives are recognised initially as a liability and subsequently as a reduction of rentals on a straight-line basis over the lease term.

Contingent rentals are recognised as an expense in the period in which they are incurred.

Leases of land and buildings

Where a lease is for land and buildings, the land component is separated from the building component and the classification for each is assessed separately.

1.12.2 The Trust as lessor

Finance leases

Amounts due from lessees under finance leases are recorded as receivables at the amount of the Trust's net investment in the leases. Finance lease income is allocated to accounting periods to reflect a constant periodic rate of return on the Trust's net investment outstanding in respect of the leases.

Operating leases

Rental income from operating leases is recognised on a straight-line basis over the term of the lease. Initial direct costs incurred in negotiating and arranging an operating lease are added to the carrying amount of the leased asset and recognised as an expense on a straight-line basis over the lease term.

1.13 Provisions

The Trust recognises a provision where it has a present legal or constructive obligation of uncertain timing or amount; for which it is probable that there will be a future outflow of cash or other resources; and a reliable estimate can be made of the amount. The amount recognised in the Statement of Financial Position is the best estimate of the resources required to settle the obligation. Where the effect of the time value of money is significant, the estimated risk-adjusted cash flows are discounted using the discount rates published and mandated by HM Treasury.

Clinical negligence costs

NHS Resolution operates a risk pooling scheme under which the Trust pays an annual contribution to NHS Resolution, which, in return, settles all clinical negligence claims. Although NHS Resolution is administratively responsible for all clinical negligence cases, the legal liability remains with the Trust. The total value of clinical negligence provisions carried by NHS Resolution on behalf of the Trust is disclosed at note 23.2 but is not recognised in the Trust's accounts.

Non-clinical risk pooling

The Trust participates in the Property Expenses Scheme and the Liabilities to Third Parties Scheme. Both are risk pooling schemes under which the Trust pays an annual contribution to NHS Resolution and in return receives assistance with the costs of claims arising. The annual membership contributions, and any "excesses" payable in respect of particular claims are charged to operating expenses when the liability arises.

1.14 Contingencies

Contingent assets (that is, assets arising from past events whose existence will only be confirmed by one or more future events not wholly within the entity's control) are not recognised as assets, but would be disclosed in note 24 where an inflow of economic benefits is probable.

Contingent liabilities are not recognised, but are disclosed in note 24, unless the probability of a transfer of economic benefits is remote.

Contingent liabilities are defined as:

- possible obligations arising from past events whose existence will be confirmed only by the occurrence of one or more uncertain future events not wholly within the entity's control; or
- present obligations arising from past events but for which it is not probable that a transfer of economic benefits will arise or for which the amount of the obligation cannot be measured with sufficient reliability.

1.15 Public dividend capital

Public dividend capital (PDC) is a type of public sector equity finance based on the excess of assets over liabilities at the time of establishment of the predecessor NHS organisation. HM Treasury has determined that PDC is not a financial instrument within the meaning of IAS 32.

At any time, the Secretary of State can issue new PDC to, and require repayments of PDC from, the Trust. PDC is recorded at the value received.

A charge, reflecting the cost of capital utilised by the Trust, is payable as public dividend capital dividend. The charge is calculated at the rate set by HM Treasury (currently 3.5%) on the average relevant net assets of the Trust during the financial year. Relevant net assets are calculated as the value of all assets less the value of all liabilities, except for:

- (i) donated assets (including lottery funded assets),
- (ii) average daily cash balances held with the Government Banking Services (GBS) and National Loans Fund (NLF) deposits, excluding cash balances held in GBS accounts that relate to a short-term working capital facility, and
- (iii) any PDC dividend balance receivable or payable.

In accordance with the requirements laid down by the Department of Health and Social Care (as the issuer of PDC), the dividend for the year is calculated on the actual average relevant net assets as set out in the "pre-audit" version of the annual accounts. The dividend thus calculated is not revised should any adjustment to net assets occur as a result of the audit of the annual accounts.

1.16 Value added tax

Most of the activities of the Trust are outside the scope of VAT and, in general, output tax does not apply and input tax on purchases is not recoverable. Irrecoverable VAT is charged to the relevant expenditure category or included in the capitalised purchase cost of fixed assets. Where output tax is charged or input VAT is recoverable, the amounts are stated net of VAT.

1.17 Foreign exchange

The functional and presentational currency of the Trust is sterling.

A transaction which is denominated in a foreign currency is translated into the functional currency at the spot exchange rate on the date of the transaction.

Where the Trust has assets or liabilities denominated in a foreign currency at the Statement of Financial Position date:

- monetary items are translated at the spot exchange rate on 31 March
- non-monetary assets and liabilities measured at historical cost are translated using the spot exchange rate at the date of the transaction and
- non-monetary assets and liabilities measured at fair value are translated using the spot exchange rate at the date the fair value was determined.

Exchange gains or losses on monetary items (arising on settlement of the transaction or on re-translation at the Statement of Financial Position date) are recognised in income or expense in the period in which they arise.

Exchange gains or losses on non-monetary assets and liabilities are recognised in the same manner as other gains and losses on these items.

1.18 Third party assets

Assets belonging to third parties (such as money held on behalf of patients) are not recognised in the accounts since the Trust has no beneficial interest in them. However, they are disclosed in a separate note to the accounts in accordance with the requirements of HM Treasury's *FReM*.

1.19 Losses and special payments

Losses and special payments are items that Parliament would not have contemplated when it agreed funds for the health service or passed legislation. By their nature they are items that ideally should not arise. They are therefore subject to special control procedures compared with the generality of payments. They are divided into different categories, which govern the way that individual cases are handled. Losses and special payments are charged to the relevant functional headings in expenditure on an accruals basis, including losses which would have been made good through insurance cover had the Trust not been bearing their own risks (with insurance premiums then being included as normal revenue expenditure).

However the losses and special payments note is compiled directly from the losses and compensations register which reports on an accrual basis with the exception of provisions for future losses.

1.20 Early adoption of standards, amendments and interpretations

No new accounting standards or revisions to existing standards have been early adopted in 2018/19.

1.21 Standards, amendments and interpretations in issue but not yet effective or adopted

- IFRS 16 Leases – Application required for accounting periods beginning on or after 1 January 2019, but not yet adopted by the FReM: early adoption is not therefore permitted.



2 Operating income from patient care activities

All income from patient care activities relates to contract income recognised in line with accounting policy 1.4.1

2.1 Income from patient care activities (by nature)

	2018/19 £000	2017/18 £000
Acute services		
Elective income	56,326	54,177
Non elective income	117,041	110,602
First outpatient income	23,290	20,548
Follow up outpatient income	27,196	28,642
A & E income	15,323	14,371
Other NHS clinical income	65,513	65,861
Community services		
Community services income from CCGs and NHS England	13,719	12,883
All services		
Private patient income	720	660
Agenda for Change pay award central funding	3,409	
Other clinical income	2,039	2,642
Total income from activities	324,576	310,386

2.2 Income from patient care activities (by source)

Income from patient care activities received from:	2018/19 £000	2017/18 £000
NHS England	17,550	19,405
Clinical commissioning groups	294,149	281,461
Department of Health and Social Care	3,409	-
Other NHS providers	776	798
Local authorities	2,441	2,391
Non-NHS: private patients	720	660
Non-NHS: overseas patients (chargeable to patient)	39	83
Injury cost recovery scheme*	1,455	1,425
Non NHS: other**	4,037	4,163
Total income from activities	324,576	310,386

Note: all income relates to continuing operations

* Injury cost recovery income is subject to a provision for impairment of receivables of 21.89% to reflect expected rates of collection. ** The main component of this is patient care contracts with non-English NHS bodies.

2.3 Overseas visitors (relating to patients charged directly by the Trust)

	2018/19 £000	2017/18 £000
Income recognised this year	39	83
Cash payments received in-year	34	58
Amounts added to provision for impairment of receivables	9	14
Amounts written off in-year	6	3

3 Other operating income

	2018/19 £000	2017/18 £000
Other operating income from contracts with customers:		
Research and development (contract)	628	590
Education and training (excluding notional apprenticeship levy income)	11,526	11,032
Non-patient care services to other bodies*	28,136	29,774
Provider sustainability / sustainability and transformation fund income (PSF / STF)	10,967	7,945
Other contract income**	25,994	23,672
Other non-contract operating income		
Education and training - notional income from apprenticeship fund	230	58
Receipt of capital grants and donations	69	125
Amortisation of PFI deferred income / credits	32	5
Total other operating income	77,582	73,201

Note: all income relates to continuing operations

* These services also include clinical services provided by the Trust to other organisations for their patients. **The principal item here is income relating to the Trust's PFI development (£13m) received from the Department of Health and Social Care via NHS England.

Note re operating segments: The activities of the Trust are all healthcare-related and treated as a single segment for the purposes of the accounts. The Trust's total income for 2018-19 was £402.158m of which 81% related to patient care activities for which clinical commissioning groups and NHS England account for 96% of the income.

3.1 Additional information on revenue from contracts with customers recognised in the period

	2018/19 £000
Revenue recognised in the reporting period that was included in within contract liabilities at the previous period end	686

4 Fees and charges

HM Treasury requires disclosure of fees and charges income. The following disclosure is of income from charges to service users where income from that service exceeds £1 million and is presented as the aggregate of such income. The cost associated with the service that generated the income is also disclosed. There is nothing to disclose here.

5 Operating Expenses

	2018/19 £000	2017/18 £000
Purchase of healthcare from NHS and DHSC bodies	11,998	12,550
Purchase of healthcare from non-NHS and non-DHSC bodies	2,324	2,760
Staff and executive directors costs	238,599	219,697
Remuneration of non-executive directors	67	58
Supplies and services - clinical (excluding drugs costs)	29,289	28,689
Supplies and services - general	1,673	1,749
Drug costs (drugs inventory consumed and purchase of non-inventory drugs)	23,595	24,289
Consultancy costs	6	49
Establishment	3,682	3,627
Premises	18,036	16,834
Transport (including patient travel)	1,044	1,019
Depreciation on property, plant and equipment	7,724	7,802
Amortisation on intangible assets	642	629
Net impairments	4,179	(4,822)
Movement in credit loss allowance: contract receivables / contract assets	11	
Movement in credit loss allowance: all other receivables and investments	-	15
Increase/(decrease) in other provisions	-	(43)
Change in provisions discount rate(s)	(30)	24
Audit fees payable to the external auditor *:		
audit services- statutory audit	49	49
other auditor remuneration (external auditor only)	35	7
Internal audit costs	104	105
Clinical negligence	9,307	7,265
Legal fees	196	215
Insurance	255	201
Research and development	618	499
Education and training	2,812	2,403
Rentals under operating leases	900	546
Early retirements	44	59
Redundancy	315	231
Charges to operating expenditure for on-SoFP IFRIC 12 schemes (e.g. PFI)	26,327	25,176
Hospitality	160	148
Other	6,314	5,925
Total	390,275	357,755

Note: all expenses relate to continuing operations

(* Statutory audit fees are not VAT recoverable. The other auditor remuneration line includes the audit of the Quality account which is also not VAT recoverable and consultancy fees which are. The amounts net of VAT are: audit services - statutory audit (£41k) and other auditor remuneration (£34k).

5.1 Other auditor remuneration

	2018/19 £000	2017/18 £000
Other auditor remuneration paid to the external auditor:		
1. Audit of accounts of any associate of the Trust	-	-
2. Audit-related assurance services	-	-
3. Taxation compliance services	-	-
4. All taxation advisory services not falling within item 3 above	-	-
5. Internal audit services	-	-
6. All assurance services not falling within items 1 to 5	-	-
7. Corporate finance transaction services not falling within items 1 to 6 above	-	-
8. Other non-audit services not falling within items 2 to 7 above	35	7
Total	35	7

5.2 Limitation on auditor's liability

The limitation on auditor's liability for external audit work is £2m (2017/18: £2m).

6 Impairment of assets

	2018/19 £000	2017/18 £000
Net impairments charged to operating surplus / deficit resulting from:		
Changes in market price	4,179	(4,822)
Total net impairments charged to operating surplus / deficit	4,179	(4,822)
Impairments charged to the revaluation reserve	(25)	(4,721)
Total net impairments	4,154	(9,543)

*The above impairment reversals arose as a result of a formal revaluation of the Trust's buildings in 2018-19.
(See also Note 15.)*

7 Employee benefits

	2018/19	2017/18
	Total	Total
	£000	£000
Salaries and wages	193,575	176,501
Social security costs	17,445	16,017
Apprenticeship levy	959	886
Employer's contributions to NHS pensions	21,237	19,380
Pension cost - other	45	18
Temporary staff (including agency)	8,171	9,397
Total staff costs	241,432	222,199
Of which		
Costs capitalised as part of assets	37	67
Total staff costs (excluding capitalised costs)	241,395	222,132

7.1 Retirements due to ill-health

During 2018/19 there were 4 early retirements from the Trust agreed on the grounds of ill-health (4 in the year ended 31 March 2018). The estimated additional pension liabilities of these ill-health retirements is £200k (£94k in 2017/18).

The cost of these ill-health retirements will be borne by the NHS Business Services Authority - Pensions Division.

8 Pension costs

Past and present employees are covered by the provisions of the two NHS Pension Schemes. Details of the benefits payable and rules of the Schemes can be found on the NHS Pensions website at www.nhsbsa.nhs.uk/pensions. Both are unfunded defined benefit schemes that cover NHS employers, GP practices and other bodies, allowed under the direction of the Secretary of State in England and Wales. They are not designed to be run in a way that would enable NHS bodies to identify their share of the underlying scheme assets and liabilities. Therefore, each scheme is accounted for as if it were a defined contribution scheme: the cost to the NHS body of participating in each scheme is taken as equal to the contributions payable to that scheme for the accounting period.

In order that the defined benefit obligations recognised in the financial statements do not differ materially from those that would be determined at the reporting date by a formal actuarial valuation, the FReM requires that “the period between formal valuations shall be four years, with approximate assessments in intervening years”. An outline of these follows:

a) Accounting valuation

A valuation of scheme liability is carried out annually by the scheme actuary (currently the Government Actuary's Department) as at the end of the reporting period. This utilises an actuarial assessment for the previous accounting period in conjunction with updated membership and financial data for the current reporting period, and is accepted as providing suitably robust figures for financial reporting purposes. The valuation of the scheme liability as at 31 March 2019, is based on valuation data as 31 March 2018, updated to 31 March 2019 with summary global member and accounting data. In undertaking this actuarial assessment, the methodology prescribed in IAS 19, relevant FReM interpretations, and the discount rate prescribed by HM Treasury have also been used. The latest assessment of the liabilities of the scheme is contained in the report of the scheme actuary, which forms part of the annual NHS Pension Scheme Accounts. These accounts can be viewed on the NHS Pensions website and are published annually. Copies can also be obtained from The Stationery Office.

b) Full actuarial (funding) valuation

The purpose of this valuation is to assess the level of liability in respect of the benefits due under the schemes (taking into account recent demographic experience), and to recommend contribution rates payable by employees and employers.

The latest actuarial valuation undertaken for the NHS Pension Scheme was completed as at 31 March 2016. The results of this valuation set the employer contribution rate payable from April 2019. The Department of Health and Social Care have recently laid Scheme Regulations confirming that the employer contribution rate will increase to 20.6% of pensionable pay from this date.

The 2016 funding valuation was also expected to test the cost of the Scheme relative to the employer cost cap set following the 2012 valuation. Following a judgment from the Court of Appeal in December 2018 Government announced a pause to that part of the valuation process pending conclusion of the continuing legal process.

National Employment Savings Trust

The Pensions Act 2008 introduced new duties on employers to provide access to a workplace pension scheme that meets certain legal requirements. As from 1 April 2013 the Trust chose the National Employment Savings Trust (NEST) to fulfil this role for employees who are unable to join the NHS Pension Scheme due to its restrictions. There are currently 227 employees in the NEST scheme which is a defined contribution pension scheme. A defined contribution pension scheme is where the retirement income a member gets depends on how much has been contributed, investment returns and the amount of charges over time.

9 Operating leases

9.1 St Helens And Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust as a lessor

The Trust does not receive any income as a lessor. (Prior year also nil.)

9.2 St Helens And Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust as a lessee

This note discloses costs and commitments incurred in operating lease arrangements where St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust is the lessee.

Lease arrangements involve land and buildings with terms ranging from less than one year to 25 years. The principal lease and the one with the longest term relates to land used for the purpose of car parking.

	2018/19 £000	2017/18 £000
Operating lease expense		
Minimum lease payments	900	546
Total	900	546
	31 March 2019 £000	31 March 2018 £000
Future minimum lease payments due:		
- not later than one year;	847	492
- later than one year and not later than five years;	1,079	487
- later than five years.	3,467	-
Total	5,393	979

10 Finance income

Finance income represents interest received on assets and investments in the period.

	2018/19 £000	2017/18 £000
Interest on bank accounts	227	86
Total finance income	227	86

11 Finance expenditure

Finance expenditure represents interest and other charges involved in the borrowing of money.

	2018/19 £000	2017/18 £000
Interest expense:		
Loans from the Department of Health and Social Care	125	73
Finance leases	79	33
Interest on late payment of commercial debt	7	2
Main finance costs on PFI scheme obligations	8,773	8,963
Contingent finance costs on PFI scheme obligations	7,988	7,213
Total interest expense	16,972	16,284
Unwinding of discount on provisions	2	6
Total finance costs	16,974	16,290

11.1 The late payment of commercial debts (interest) Act 1998 / Public Contract Regulations 2015

	2018/19 £000	2017/18 £000
Amounts included within interest payable arising from claims under this legislation	7	2



12 Intangible assets

12.1 Intangible assets - 2018/19

	Software licences £000	Internally generated information technology £000	Total £000
Valuation / gross cost at 1 April 2018 - brought forward	694	2,568	3,262
Additions	81	51	132
Valuation / gross cost at 31 March 2019	775	2,619	3,394
Amortisation at 1 April 2018 - brought forward	297	1,530	1,827
Provided during the year	143	499	642
Amortisation at 31 March 2019	440	2,029	2,469
Net book value at 31 March 2019	335	590	925
Net book value at 1 April 2018	397	1,038	1,435

12.2 Intangible assets - 2017/18

	Software licences £000	Internally generated information technology £000	Total £000
Valuation / gross cost at 1 April 2017	480	2,824	3,304
Additions	261	275	536
Disposals / derecognition	(47)	(531)	(578)
Valuation / gross cost at 31 March 2018	694	2,568	3,262
Amortisation at 1 April 2017	236	1,540	1,776
Provided during the year	108	521	629
Disposals / derecognition	(47)	(531)	(578)
Amortisation at 31 March 2018	297	1,530	1,827
Net book value at 31 March 2018	397	1,038	1,435
Net book value at 1 April 2017	244	1,284	1,528

13 Property, plant and equipment

13.1 Property, plant and equipment - 2018/19

	Land £000	Buildings excluding dwellings £000	Assets under construction £000	Plant & machinery £000	Transport equipment £000	Information technology £000	Furniture & fittings £000	Total £000
Valuation/gross cost at 1 April 2018 - brought forward	6,500	237,606	2,543	45,253	112	3,733	6,335	302,082
Additions	-	734	2,518	4,468	-	1,790	-	9,510
Impairments	-	(124)	-	-	-	-	-	(124)
Reversals of impairments	-	149	-	-	-	-	-	149
Reclassifications	-	3,040	(3,040)	-	-	-	-	-
Netting off accumulated depreciation against cost	-	(7,805)	-	-	-	-	-	(7,805)
Disposals / derecognition	-	-	-	(2,187)	-	-	-	(2,187)
Valuation/gross cost at 31 March 2019	6,500	233,600	2,021	47,534	112	5,523	6,335	301,625
Accumulated depreciation at 1 April 2018 - brought forward	-	-	-	33,182	91	1,739	5,834	40,846
Provided during the year	-	3,626	-	3,175	5	727	191	7,724
Impairments	-	4,230	-	-	-	-	-	4,230
Reversals of impairments	-	(51)	-	-	-	-	-	(51)
Netting off accumulated depreciation against cost	-	(7,805)	-	-	-	-	-	(7,805)
Disposals / derecognition	-	-	-	(2,187)	-	-	-	(2,187)
Accumulated depreciation at 31 March 2019	-	-	-	34,170	96	2,466	6,025	42,757
Net book value at 31 March 2019	6,500	233,600	2,021	13,364	16	3,057	310	258,868
Net book value at 1 April 2018	6,500	237,606	2,543	12,071	21	1,994	501	261,236

13.2 Property, plant and equipment - 2017/18

	Land £000	Buildings excluding dwellings £000	Assets under construction £000	Plant & machinery £000	Transport equipment £000	Information technology £000	Furniture & fittings £000	Total £000
Valuation / gross cost at 1 April 2017	6,500	234,364	-	43,503	112	3,935	6,328	294,742
Additions	-	234	2,597	4,887	-	919	7	8,644
Impairments	-	(906)	-	-	-	-	-	(906)
Reversals of impairments	-	3,914	-	-	-	-	-	3,914
Reclassifications	-	-	(54)	54	-	-	-	-
Disposals / derecognition	-	-	-	(3,191)	-	(1,121)	-	(4,312)
Valuation/gross cost at 31 March 2018	6,500	237,606	2,543	45,253	112	3,733	6,335	302,082
Accumulated depreciation at 1 April 2017	-	3,157	-	33,023	86	2,078	5,547	43,891
Provided during the year	-	3,378	-	3,350	5	782	287	7,802
Impairments	-	5,375	-	-	-	-	-	5,375
Reversals of impairments	-	(11,910)	-	-	-	-	-	(11,910)
Disposals / derecognition	-	-	-	(3,191)	-	(1,121)	-	(4,312)
Accumulated depreciation at 31 March 2018	-	-	-	33,182	91	1,739	5,834	40,846
Net book value at 31 March 2018	6,500	237,606	2,543	12,071	21	1,994	501	261,236
Net book value at 1 April 2017	6,500	231,207	-	10,480	26	1,857	781	250,851

13.3 Property, plant and equipment financing - 2018/19

	Land £000	Buildings excluding dwellings £000	Assets under construction £000	Plant & machinery £000	Transport equipment £000	Information technology £000	Furniture & fittings £000	Total £000
Net book value at 31 March 2019								
Owned - purchased	6,500	14,140	2,021	5,396	16	2,957	310	31,340
Finance leased	-	-	-	1,205	-	83	-	1,288
On-SoFP PFI contracts and other service concession arrangements	-	219,460	-	6,433	-	-	-	225,893
Owned - donated	-	-	-	330	-	17	-	347
NBV total at 31 March 2019	6,500	233,600	2,021	13,364	16	3,057	310	258,868

13.4 Property, plant and equipment financing - 2017/18

	Land £000	Buildings excluding dwellings £000	Assets under construction £000	Plant & machinery £000	Transport equipment £000	Information technology £000	Furniture & fittings £000	Total £000
Net book value at 31 March 2018								
Owned - purchased	6,500	11,531	2,543	6,057	21	1,858	501	29,011
Finance leased	-	-	-	677	-	130	-	807
On-SoFP PFI contracts and other service concession arrangements	-	226,075	-	4,979	-	-	-	231,054
Owned - donated	-	-	-	358	-	6	-	364
NBV total at 31 March 2018	6,500	237,606	2,543	12,071	21	1,994	501	261,236

14 Donations of property, plant and equipment

Assets at a costs of £69,000 were financed by donations from the Trust's Charitable Funds in 2018/19. (Prior year £125,000.)

15 Revaluations of property, plant and equipment

For the financial year ending 31 March 2019 the Trust had a formal revaluation of the Trust's estate. This revaluation was undertaken by independent professional valuers from the firm Cushman and Wakefield. The vast majority of estate assets are valued using the alternative single site approach. See also Note 1.7.2.

16 Inventories

	31 March 2019	31 March 2018
	£000	£000
Drugs	1,501	1,504
Consumables	2,094	2,094
Energy	55	62
Total inventories	3,650	3,660

Note: None of the above inventories are held at fair value less costs to sell. Inventories recognised in expenses for the year were £45,712k (2017/18: £45,625k). Write-down of inventories recognised as expenses for the year were £0k (2017/18: £0k).

17 Trade receivables and other receivables

17.1 Trade receivables and other receivables

	31 March 2019	31 March 2018
	£000	£000
Current		
Contract receivables*	32,191	
Trade receivables*		9,953
Accrued income*		7,976
Allowance for impaired contract receivables / assets*	(661)	
Allowance for other impaired receivables	-	(665)
Prepayments (non-PFI)	2,553	2,623
PFI lifecycle prepayments	315	830
Interest receivable	24	12
VAT receivable	1,008	1,212
Other receivables	1,619	3,176
Total current trade and other receivables	37,049	25,117
Non-current		
Contract receivables*	1,401	
Allowance for impaired contract receivables / assets*	(319)	
Allowance for other impaired receivables	-	(312)
Prepayments (non-PFI)	120	-
PFI lifecycle prepayments	781	-
Other receivables	-	1,405
Total non-current trade and other receivables	1,983	1,093
Of which receivables from NHS and DHSC group bodies:		
Current	25,982	14,900
Non-current	-	-

*Following the application of IFRS 15 from 1 April 2018, the Trust's entitlements to consideration for work performed under contracts with customers are shown separately as contract receivables and contract assets. This replaces the previous analysis into trade receivables and accrued income. IFRS 15 is applied without restatement therefore the comparative analysis of receivables has not been restated under IFRS 15.

17.2 Allowances for credit losses - 2018/19

	Contract receivables and contract assets	All other receivables
	£000	£000
Allowances as at 1 Apr 2018 - brought forward		977
Impact of implementing IFRS 9 (and IFRS 15) on 1 April 2018	977	(977)
New allowances arising	11	-
Utilisation of allowances (write offs)	(8)	-
Allowances as at 31 Mar 2019	980	-

17.3 Allowances for credit losses - 2017/18

IFRS 9 and IFRS 15 are adopted without restatement therefore this analysis is prepared in line with the requirements of IFRS 7 prior to IFRS 9 adoption. As a result it differs in format to the current period disclosure.

	All receivables
	£000
Allowances as at 1 Apr 2017	968
Increase in provision	15
Amounts utilised	(6)
Allowances as at 31 Mar 2018	977

17.4 Exposure to credit risk

The majority of trade is with clinical commissioning groups as commissioners (CCGs) for NHS patient care services. As CCGs are funded by Government to buy NHS patient care services no credit scoring of them is considered necessary.

18 Cash and cash equivalents movements**18.1 Cash and cash equivalents movements**

Cash and cash equivalents comprise cash at bank, in hand and cash equivalents. Cash equivalents are readily convertible investments of known value which are subject to an insignificant risk of change in value.

	2018/19	2017/18
	£000	£000
At 1 April	11,661	1,777
Net change in year	(6,552)	9,884
At 31 March	5,109	11,661
Broken down into:		
Cash at commercial banks and in hand	99	110
Cash with the Government Banking Service	5,010	11,551
Total cash and cash equivalents as in SoFP	5,109	11,661
Total cash and cash equivalents as in SoCF	5,109	11,661

18.2 Third party assets held by the Trust

The Trust held cash and cash equivalents which relate to monies held by the Trust on behalf of patients or other parties. This has been excluded from the cash and cash equivalents figure reported in the accounts.

	31 March 2019	31 March 2018
	£000	£000
Bank balances	3	2
Total third party assets	3	2

19 Trade and other payables

	31 March 2019	31 March 2018
	£000	£000
Current		
Trade payables	3,148	5,583
Capital payables	855	633
Accruals	15,389	16,477
Receipts in advance (including payments on account)	900	-
Social security costs	9,394	6,112
Other taxes payable	5,308	5,769
Accrued interest on loans* and leases		34
Other payables**	7,489	6,481
Total current trade and other payables	42,483	41,089
Non-current	-	-
Total non-current trade and other payables	-	-
Of which payables from NHS and DHSC group bodies:		
Current	4,644	7,053
Non-current	-	-

*Following adoption of IFRS 9 on 1 April 2018, loans are measured at amortised cost. Any accrued interest is now included in the carrying value of the loan within note. IFRS 9 is applied without restatement therefore comparatives have not been restated.

**The principal element of this relates to pension payables of which none are related to early retirements.

20 Other liabilities

	31 March 2019 £000	31 March 2018 £000
Current		
Deferred income: contract liabilities	734	686
PFI deferred income / credits	-	5
Total other current liabilities	734	691
Non-current		
PFI deferred income / credits	-	27
Total other non-current liabilities	-	27

21 Borrowings

	31 March 2019 £000	31 March 2018 £000
Current		
Loans from the Department of Health and Social Care	2,563	-
Other loans	211	-
Obligations under finance leases	221	152
PFI lifecycle replacement received in advance	-	735
Obligations under PFI contracts (excl. lifecycle)	8,141	5,698
Total current borrowings	11,136	6,585
Non-current		
Loans from the Department of Health and Social Care	16,604	7,630
Other loans	1,897	1,612
Obligations under finance leases	1,092	642
Obligations under PFI contracts (excl. lifecycle)	234,844	242,985
Total non-current borrowings	254,437	252,869

Note: further information on the Trust's borrowings can be found in Note 22 (finance lease obligations) and in Note 27 (On-SoFP PFI arrangements - additional information).

21.1 Reconciliation of liabilities arising from financing activities

	Loans from DHSC £000	Other loans £000	Finance leases £000	PFI and LIFT schemes £000	Total £000
Carrying value at 1 April 2018	7,630	1,612	794	248,683	258,719
Cash movements:					
Financing cash flows - payments and receipts of principal	11,499	496	(152)	(5,698)	6,145
Financing cash flows - payments of interest	(116)	-	(84)	(8,773)	(8,973)
Non-cash movements:					
Impact of implementing IFRS 9 on 1 April 2018	29	-	5	-	34
Additions	-	-	671	-	671
Application of effective interest rate	125	-	79	8,773	8,977
Carrying value at 31 March 2019	19,167	2,108	1,313	242,985	265,573

22 Finance leases

22.1 St Helens And Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust as a lessee

Obligations under finance leases where St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust is the lessee.

	31 March 2019 £000	31 March 2018 £000
Gross lease liabilities	1,595	1,030
of which liabilities are due:		
- not later than one year;	313	230
- later than one year and not later than five years;	997	699
- later than five years.	285	101
Finance charges allocated to future periods	(282)	(236)
Net lease liabilities	1,313	794
of which payable:		
- not later than one year;	221	152
- later than one year and not later than five years;	820	552
- later than five years.	272	90



23 Provisions for liabilities and charges

23.1 Provisions for liabilities and charges analysis

	Pensions: early departure costs £000	Pensions: injury benefits* £000	Legal claims £000	Total £000
At 1 April 2018	908	1,734	208	2,850
Change in the discount rate	(8)	(22)	-	(30)
Arising during the year	44	104	104	252
Utilised during the year	(77)	(117)	(74)	(268)
Reversed unused	-	-	(88)	(88)
Unwinding of discount	1	1	-	2
At 31 March 2019	868	1,700	150	2,718
Expected timing of cash flows:				
- not later than one year;	80	120	150	350
- later than one year and not later than five years;	317	479	-	796
- later than five years.	471	1,101	-	1,572
Total	868	1,700	150	2,718

* In 2018/19 the analysis of provisions has been revised to separately identify provisions for injury benefit liabilities. In previous periods, these provisions were included within "other" provisions.

Note: The timing of cash flows is based on the expected payments (pensions/permanent injury benefits) and expected settlement date of claims (all other). The latter, due to the nature of legal claims, is particularly subject to change.

23.2 Clinical negligence liabilities

At 31 March 2019, £208,577k was included in provisions of NHS Resolution in respect of clinical negligence liabilities of St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust (31 March 2018: £170,582k).

24 Contingent assets and liabilities

	31 March 2019 £000	31 March 2018 £000
Value of contingent liabilities		
NHS Resolution legal claims	(54)	(42)
Other*	-	(19)
Gross value of contingent liabilities	(54)	(61)
Amounts recoverable against liabilities	-	-
Net value of contingent liabilities	(54)	(61)
Net value of contingent assets	-	-

* Legal claims dealt with locally.

25 Contractual capital commitments

There are no contractual capital commitments as at 31 March 2019. (Prior year also nil.)

26 Other financial commitments

There are no other financial commitments as at 31 March 2019. (Prior year also nil.)

27 On-SoFP PFI arrangements (additional information)

27.1 Imputed finance lease obligations

St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust has the following obligations in respect of the finance lease element of on-Statement of Financial Position PFI schemes:

	31 March 2019	31 March 2018
	£000	£000
Gross PFI, LIFT or other service concession liabilities	621,426	628,734
Of which liabilities are due		
- not later than one year;	26,320	22,459
- later than one year and not later than five years;	84,250	87,887
- later than five years.	510,856	518,388
Finance charges allocated to future periods	(378,441)	(380,051)
Net PFI, LIFT or other service concession arrangement obligation	242,985	248,683
- not later than one year;	8,141	5,698
- later than one year and not later than five years;	20,549	23,302
- later than five years.	214,295	219,683

27.2 Total on-SoFP PFI, LIFT and other service concession arrangement commitments

Total future obligations under these on-SoFP schemes are as follows:

	31 March 2019	31 March 2018
	£000	£000
Total future payments committed in respect of the PFI, LIFT or other service concession arrangements	1,465,410	1,460,586
Of which liabilities are due:		
- not later than one year;	53,251	51,670
- later than one year and not later than five years;	213,259	206,605
- later than five years.	1,198,900	1,202,311

27.3 Analysis of amounts payable to service concession operator

This note provides an analysis of the unitary payments made to the service concession operator:

	2018/19	2017/18
	£000	£000
Unitary payment payable to service concession operator	52,389	49,740
Consisting of:		
- Interest charge	8,773	8,963
- Repayment of finance lease liability	5,698	5,792
- Service element and other charges to operating expenditure	26,327	25,176
- Capital lifecycle maintenance	2,507	1,766
- Contingent rent	7,988	7,213
- Addition to lifecycle prepayment	1,096	830
Total amount paid to service concession operator	52,389	49,740

The PFI arrangement is between the Trust and New Hospitals, the latter being the special purpose vehicle currently acting for Medirest and Vinci. The main scheme was to build two new hospitals at the Trust's two sites in St Helens and Whiston. All construction was complete in November 2012. The contract term runs to August 2047, the price base being uplifted annually by the Retail Price Index, the base RPI having been set in December 2002. For the duration of the arrangement Vinci will provide hard facilities management (FM) services while soft FM services are currently provided by Medirest and are subject to scheduled market testing, the next being in June 2028.

At the end of the arrangement the ownership of the buildings will pass to the Trust. Under IFRIC12 as interpreted for the public sector, the asset is treated as an asset of the Trust; the substance of the contract is that the Trust has a finance lease and payments comprise two elements - imputed finance lease charges and service charges.

The PFI arrangement also incorporates a managed equipment service (MES) provided by GE which expires in 2026. In the contract the legal title of equipment remains that of GE for the duration of the contract with the legal title passing to the Trust upon expiry of the MES Contract term when the Trust shall purchase all functioning MES Equipment at a price equivalent to the current net book value.

28 Financial instruments

28.1 Financial risk management

Financial reporting standard IFRS 7 requires disclosure of the role that financial instruments have had during the period in creating or changing the risks a body faces in undertaking its activities. Because of the continuing service provider relationship that the Trust has with Clinical Commissioning Groups (CCGs) and the way those CCGs are financed, the Trust is not exposed to the degree of financial risk faced by business entities. Also financial instruments play a much more limited role in creating or changing risk than would be typical of listed companies, to which the financial reporting standards mainly apply. The Trust has limited powers to borrow or invest surplus funds and financial assets and liabilities are generated by day-to-day operational activities rather than being held to change the risks facing the Trust in undertaking its activities.

The Trust's treasury management operations are carried out by the finance department, within parameters defined formally within the Trust's standing financial instructions and policies agreed by the board of directors. Trust treasury activity is subject to review by the Trust's internal auditors.

Currency risk

The Trust is principally a domestic organisation with the great majority of transactions, assets and liabilities being in the UK and sterling based. The Trust has no overseas operations and therefore has low exposure to currency rate fluctuations.

Interest rate risk

The Trust borrows from government for capital expenditure, subject to affordability as confirmed by NHS Improvement. The borrowings are for 1 to 25 years, in line with the life of the associated assets, and interest is charged at the National Loans Fund rate, fixed for the life of the loan. The Trust therefore has low exposure to interest rate fluctuations.

The Trust may also borrow from government for revenue financing subject to approval by NHS Improvement. Interest rates are confirmed by the Department of Health and Social Care (the lender) at the point borrowing is undertaken.

The Trust therefore has low exposure to interest rate fluctuations.

Credit risk

Because the majority of the Trust's revenue comes from contracts with other public sector bodies, the Trust has low exposure to credit risk. The maximum exposures as at 31 March 2019 are in receivables from customers, as disclosed in the trade and other receivables note.

Liquidity risk

The Trust's operating costs are incurred under contracts with CCGs, which are financed from resources voted annually by Parliament. The Trust funds its capital expenditure from funds obtained within its prudential borrowing limit. The Trust is not, therefore, exposed to significant liquidity risks.

28.2 Carrying values of financial assets

IFRS 9 Financial Instruments is applied retrospectively from 1 April 2018 without restatement of comparatives. As such, comparative disclosures have been prepared under IAS 39 and the measurement categories differ to those in the current year analyses.

	Held at amortised cost £000	Total book value £000
Carrying values of financial assets as at 31 March 2019 under IFRS 9		
Trade and other receivables excluding non financial assets	32,612	32,612
Cash and cash equivalents at bank and in hand	5,109	5,109
Total at 31 March 2019	37,721	37,721
	Loans and receivables £000	Total book value £000
Carrying values of financial assets as at 31 March 2018 under IAS 39		
Trade and other receivables excluding non financial assets	17,929	17,929
Cash and cash equivalents at bank and in hand	11,661	11,661
Total at 31 March 2018	29,590	29,590

28.3 Carrying value of financial liabilities

IFRS 9 Financial Instruments is applied retrospectively from 1 April 2018 without restatement of comparatives. As such, comparative disclosures have been prepared under IAS 39 and the measurement categories differ to those in the current year analyses.

	Held at amortised cost £000	Total book value £000
Carrying values of financial liabilities as at 31 March 2019 under IFRS 9		
Loans from the Department of Health and Social Care	19,167	19,167
Obligations under finance leases	1,313	1,313
Obligations under PFI, LIFT and other service concession contracts	242,985	242,985
Other borrowings	2,108	2,108
Trade and other payables excluding non financial liabilities	26,881	26,881
Total at 31 March 2019	292,454	292,454

	Other financial liabilities £000	Total book value £000
Carrying values of financial liabilities as at 31 March 2018 under IAS 39		
Loans from the Department of Health and Social Care	7,630	7,630
Obligations under finance leases	794	794
Obligations under PFI, LIFT and other service concession contracts	249,418	249,418
Other borrowings	1,612	1,612
Trade and other payables excluding non financial liabilities	29,174	29,174
Total at 31 March 2018	288,628	288,628

28.4 Fair values of financial assets and liabilities

Book value (carrying value) has been used as a reasonable approximation of fair value.

28.5 Maturity of financial liabilities

	31 March 2019 £000	31 March 2018 £000
In one year or less	38,017	35,759
In more than one year but not more than two years	5,799	8,611
In more than two years but not more than five years	33,861	24,485
In more than five years	214,777	219,773
Total	292,454	288,628

29 Losses and special payments

	2018/19 Total number of cases Number	Total value of cases £000	2017/18 Total number of cases Number	Total value of cases £000
Losses				
Cash losses	-	-	5	1
Bad debts and claims abandoned	26	7	64	5
Stores losses and damage to property	31	9	29	22
Total losses	57	16	98	28
Special payments				
Ex-gratia payments	48	94	53	98
Total special payments	48	94	53	98
Total losses and special payments	105	110	151	126
Compensation payments received		-		-

30 Initial application of new standards (IFRS 9 and IFRS 15)

30.1 Initial application of IFRS 9

IFRS 9 Financial Instruments as interpreted and adapted by the GAM has been applied by the Trust from 1 April 2018. The standard is applied retrospectively with the cumulative effect of initial application recognised as an adjustment to reserves on 1 April 2018.

IFRS 9 replaces IAS 39 and introduces a revised approach to classification and measurement of financial assets and financial liabilities, a new forward-looking 'expected loss' impairment model and a revised approach to hedge accounting.

Under IFRS 9, borrowings from the Department of Health and Social Care, which were previously held at historic cost, are measured on an amortised cost basis. Consequently, on 1 April 2018 borrowings re DHSC loans increased by £29k, and trade and other payables correspondingly reduced. Similarly borrowings re finance leases increased by £5k and trade and other payables correspondingly reduced.

Reassessment of allowances for credit losses under the expected loss model resulted in a £0k decrease in the carrying value of receivables.

The GAM expands the definition of a contract in the context of financial instruments to include legislation and regulations, except where this gives rise to a tax. Implementation of this adaptation on 1 April 2018 has led to the classification of receivables relating to Injury Cost Recovery as a financial asset measured at amortised cost. The carrying value of these receivables at 1 April 2018 was £3,246k.

30.2 Initial application of IFRS 15

IFRS 15 Revenue from Contracts with Customers as interpreted and adapted by the GAM has been applied by the Trust from 1 April 2018. The standard is applied retrospectively with the cumulative effect of initial application recognised as an adjustment to the income and expenditure reserve on 1 April 2018.

IFRS 15 introduces a new model for the recognition of revenue from contracts with customers replacing the previous standards IAS 11, IAS 18 and related interpretations. The core principle of IFRS 15 is that an entity recognises revenue when it satisfies performance obligations through the transfer of promised goods or services to customers at an amount that reflects the consideration to which the entity expects to be entitled to in exchange for those goods or services.

As directed by the GAM, the Trust has applied the practical expedient offered in C7A of the standard removing the need to retrospectively restate any contract modifications that occurred before the date of implementation (1 April 2018).

31 Related parties

During the year none of the Department of Health and Social Care Ministers, Trust board members or members of the key management staff, or parties related to any of them, has undertaken any material transactions with St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust.

The Trust's Chairman, Mr R Fraser, was also the interim Chairman of Southport and Ormskirk Hospitals NHS Trust until November 2018, an organisation with which the Trust does have business transactions.

The Department of Health and Social Care is regarded as a related party. During the year St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust has had a significant number of material transactions with the Department, and with other entities for which the Department is regarded as the parent Department. The principal entities are:

- St Helens CCG
- Knowsley CCG
- Halton CCG
- Liverpool CCG
- NHS England
- Health Education England
- NHS Business Services Authority
- HM Revenue and Customs

The Trust has also received revenue and capital payments from the Trust's related NHS charity, the Whiston and St Helens Hospitals Charitable Fund, the corporate trustees for which are also members of the NHS Trust board. Please refer to the separate Trustees Report and Accounts for this charity.

32 Events after the reporting date

The Trust has nothing to report.

33 Better Payment Practice code

	2018/19 Number	2018/19 £000	2017/18 Number	2017/18 £000
Non-NHS Payables				
Total non-NHS trade invoices paid in the year	47,609	170,002	48,888	162,159
Total non-NHS trade invoices paid within target	43,423	164,686	44,703	157,055
Percentage of non-NHS trade invoices paid within target	91.2%	96.9%	91.4%	96.9%
NHS Payables				
Total NHS trade invoices paid in the year	3,548	20,427	2,906	19,577
Total NHS trade invoices paid within target	3,408	19,780	2,723	18,010
Percentage of NHS trade invoices paid within target	96.1%	96.8%	93.7%	92.0%

The Better Payment Practice code requires the NHS body to aim to pay all valid invoices by the due date or within 30 days of receipt of valid invoice, whichever is later.

34 External financing

The Trust is given an external financing limit against which it is permitted to underspend:

	2018/19 £000	2017/18 £000
Cash flow financing	13,521	(10,233)
External financing requirement	13,521	(10,233)
External financing limit (EFL)	16,650	(601)
Under / (over) spend against EFL	3,129	9,632

35 Capital Resource Limit

	2018/19 £000	2017/18 £000
Gross capital expenditure	9,642	9,180
Less: Donated and granted capital additions	(69)	(125)
Charge against Capital Resource Limit	9,573	9,055
Capital Resource Limit	9,892	9,057
Under / (over) spend against CRL	319	2

36 Breakeven duty financial performance

	2018/19
	£000
Adjusted financial performance surplus / (deficit) (control total basis)	(597)
Breakeven duty financial performance surplus / (deficit)	(597)

37 Breakeven duty rolling assessment

	1997/98 to	2008/09	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14	2014/15	2015/16	2016/17	2017/18	2018/19
		£000	£000	£000	£000	£000	£000	£000	£000	£000	£000	£000
Breakeven duty in-year financial performance			225	296	305	700	1,150	(2,551)	(9,551)	4,861	5,001	(597)
Breakeven duty cumulative position		2,807	3,032	3,328	3,633	4,333	5,483	2,932	(6,619)	(1,758)	3,243	2,646
Operating income		236,411	252,944	263,864	278,572	288,448	301,674	313,287	349,934	383,587	402,158	
Cumulative breakeven position as a percentage of operating income		1.3%	1.3%	1.4%	1.6%	1.9%	1.0%	(2.1%)	(0.5%)	0.8%	0.7%	

Quality Account 2018-19



What our patients said about us in 2018-19

I was recently a day patient at the Holbrook Unit for minor surgery. From the moment I entered the unit to the time I left, I was treated with the utmost care. All staff were very friendly and attentive. I was very anxious but the compassion and understanding they showed me was second to none. Thank you so much to all concerned, you're absolute stars!

I received excellent care and treatment. I was admitted to 3Alpha, Whiston Hospital, with a broken hip. The care and treatment I received were first class. From the porters, tea ladies, cleaners, nurses, x-ray department, doctors and surgeon, I cannot express how kind every member of staff treated me. All staff acted in a professional, caring and friendly manner. I'd like to give a massive thank you to all. Our NHS is wonderful. Whiston Hospital has a lovely atmosphere and I would recommend it to anyone in need of treatment.

I have always had exceptional help and understanding from all of the professionals at Marshalls Cross. I called today to make an appointment for my mum for tomorrow and was greeted by a receptionist who could not have been more helpful. She was friendly, kind, respectful and efficient. I did not feel rushed at any time and they listened very carefully about my concerns for mum's health. What an amazing ambassador for Marshalls Cross Medical Centre
Thank you so much

The level of care this week from Whiston Maternity and Special Care Baby Unit for my partner & son has blown me away. Every person working in those areas should be so proud of themselves every time they go home.

Newton Community Hospital
5 star hospital
The hospital gives a great service for the people in the area. The staff are very helpful and always willing to help in any way they can. You feel like a human being instead of just a number. It is clean and welcoming, even though no one wishes to be at a hospital. Five star rating from me.

Excellent Care
I attended A&E with an asthma attack late on a Saturday night. The care I received from all the staff was outstanding. I was assessed by a nurse quickly and seen by a Dr almost immediately. Within four hours I was on my way home after full investigations and treatment. Thank you to the amazing A&E team who made a stressful situation much easier.

I just want to thank you for running such a superb, clean, friendly, professional & welcoming hospital. From the flowers in the car park and ability to find a space! The delightful screens around the beds and excellent space between the beds as well. This has been the best experience of a hospital (private or NHS) in my lifetime. Whether as a patient (the surgery & care I received today was exemplary), relative or visitor. By profession I am trained to look for faults. I couldn't find even a suggestion of one today. If all of the NHS was run in the same way that St Helens Hospital is, well, this hospital shows how it should be, your staff should be so proud.

Contents

1. Section 1		
1.1.	Summary of quality achievements in 2018-19	5
1.2.	Statement on quality from the Chief Executive of the Trust	8
2. Section 2		
2.1.	About us	13
2.1.1.	Our services	13
2.1.2.	Our staff and resources	15
2.1.3.	Our communities	17
2.1.4.	Our partners	17
2.1.5.	Technology and information	19
2.2.	Summary of how we did against our 2018-19 Quality Account priorities	22
2.2.1.	Progress in achieving 2018-19 quality goals	22
2.3.	Quality priorities for improvement for 2019-20	24
2.4.	Statements relating to the quality of the NHS services provided by the Trust in 2018-19	26
2.4.1.	Review of services	26
2.4.2.	Participation in clinical audit	26
2.4.3.	Participation in clinical research	39
2.4.4.	Clinical goals agreed with commissioners	42
2.4.5.	Statements from the Care Quality Commission (CQC)	44
2.4.6.	Learning from deaths	46
2.4.7.	Priority clinical standards for seven day hospital services	49
2.4.8.	Information governance and toolkit attainment levels	51
2.4.9.	Clinical coding error rate	52
2.4.10.	Data quality	52
2.4.11.	Benchmarking information	54
2.4.12.	Performance against national targets and regulatory requirements	61
3. Section 3		
3.1.	Summary of how we did in achieving our strategies	63
3.1.1.	Clinical and Quality Strategy 2016-20	63
3.1.2.	Nursing and Midwifery Strategy 2014-18	64
3.1.3.	Human Resources and Workforce Strategy 2014-19	65
3.1.4.	Equality, Diversity and Inclusion Strategy	66
3.1.5.	Freedom to speak up	69
3.1.6.	Staff survey key questions	70
3.1.7.	Health, Work and Wellbeing	72
3.1.8.	Clinical education and training	73
3.2.	Patient safety	73
3.2.1.	Falls	73
3.2.2.	Venous thromboembolism (VTE)	74
3.2.3.	Medicine safety	74
3.2.4.	Pressure ulcers	75
3.2.5.	Theatre safety	75
3.2.6.	National Early Warning Score (NEWS2)	76
3.2.7.	Being open – duty of candour	77
3.2.8.	Never events	77
3.2.9.	Infection control	78
3.2.10.	Safety Thermometer	79
3.2.11.	Safeguarding	80
3.3.	Clinical effectiveness	82
3.3.1.	National Institute for Health and Care Excellence Guidance	82
3.3.2.	Mortality	83
3.3.3.	Clinical audit	83
3.3.4.	Intensive Care National Audit & Research Centre (ICNARC)	83
3.3.5.	Copeland risk adjustment barometer (CRAB)	83
3.3.6.	National Community Hospitals Intermediate Care Audit	84
3.3.7.	Acute Kidney Injury (AKI)	86
3.3.8.	Promoting health	86
3.4.	Patient experience	87
3.4.1.	Friends and Family Test	90
3.4.2.	Complaints	91
3.5.	Service developments	93
3.5.1.	Surgical Care Group	93
3.5.2.	Medical Care Group	94
3.5.3.	Primary and Community Care Group	96
3.5.4.	Clinical Support Services Care Group	96
3.6.	Summary of national patient surveys	98
3.6.1.	National Inpatient Survey	98
3.6.2.	National Emergency Department Survey	98
3.6.3.	National Children and Young People Survey	99
3.6.4.	National Maternity Survey	99
3.6.5.	National Cancer Patient Experience Survey (NCPES)	100
4. Annex		
4.1.	Statement of Directors' responsibilities in respect of the Quality Account	103
4.2.	Written statements by other bodies	104
4.2.1.	Halton Borough Council	104
4.2.2.	Warrington Clinical Commissioning Group and Halton Clinical Commissioning Group	105
4.2.3.	Knowsley Clinical Commissioning Group and St Helens Clinical Commissioning Group	108
4.2.4.	Healthwatch Halton	110
4.2.5.	Healthwatch Knowsley	112
4.2.6.	Healthwatch St Helens	113
4.2.7.	Independent Auditor	114
4.3.	Amendments made to the Quality Account following feedback and written statements from other bodies	118
5. Abbreviations		

Section 1

1.1. Summary of quality achievements in 2018-19

Quality of services overall

- **Outstanding** rating awarded by the Care Quality Commission (CQC), the best possible rating, in the latest report received in March 2019

Patient safety

- Patients received 99.1% new harm-free care during 2018-19, an increase from 98.9% in 2017-18. This is harm occurring whilst an inpatient in the Trust and reported via the NHS Safety Thermometer
- No patients experienced a hospital acquired grade 3 or 4 pressure ulcer for the second year running
- No methicillin resistant staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) bacteraemia, with one contaminant
- Performed significantly better than the threshold of 40 for clostridium difficile
- Reductions in incidents resulting in harm in 2018-19 compared with 2017-18
 - 71% reduction in theatre-related episodes of moderate and above harms from 7 in 2017-18 to 2 in 2018-19
 - 86% decrease in medication incidents resulting in moderate harm or above from 14 in 2017-18 to 2 in 2018-19
 - 36% decrease in harmful medication incidents from 56 in 2017-18 to 36 in 2018-19
 - 18% decrease in falls incidents resulting in severe harm or above from 22 in 2017-18 to 18 in 2018-19
 - 0 prescribing incidents of moderate/severe harms, compared to 4 in 2017-18
- 1st nationally for flu vaccination of frontline staff, achieving 95.4% compared to 87% in 2017-18
- 96.5% fill rate for registered nurses/midwives compared to 93.9% in 2017-18
- Successfully implemented Safe Care Allocate System across all areas to ensure right levels of staff are available to deliver safe patient care
- Implemented the Electronic Prescribing and Medicine Administration (ePMA) System across the Medical Care Group, which is being rolled out Trust-wide. The electronic system enhances safe prescribing and administration process
- Medicines Safety Nurse appointed to oversee medicines safety initiatives
- The Cell Pathology, Microbiology, Clinical Biochemistry and Haematology & Blood Transfusion departments based at Whiston, St Helens, Southport and Ormskirk hospitals have individually been awarded United Kingdom Accreditation Services (UKAS) ISO15189 accreditation for the first time and at the first attempt since the new standards replaced the old CPA accreditation standards. This means that pathology is performing to high international standards with regard to quality and competency
- Trust's Radiology Service was recommended for Imaging Services Accreditation Scheme (ISAS), following a rigorous review – the first Trust in Cheshire and Merseyside to receive this award

Patient experience

- Best acute Trust nationally for the second year running in 2018 for the Patient Led Assessments of the Care Environment (PLACE), with top marks in the country for; cleanliness, food, privacy and dignity, facilities for patients living with dementia and disabilities, condition, appearance and maintenance of the hospital buildings. The assessment included the Trust's new Intermediate Care Unit at Newton Hospital for the first time
- 96% of inpatients would recommend our services, as recorded by the Friends and Family Test

Clinical effectiveness

- Consistently maintained top 5 rating in the UK overall in the Sentinel Stroke National Audit Programme (SSNAP), delivering sustained excellent performance
- 85.7% of stroke patients spent at least 90% of their hospital stay on a stroke unit, above the national target of 83%
- 96.4% of electronic E-attendance summaries sent for patients attending the Emergency Department (ED) within 24 hours
- Gastroenterology Service successfully secured Joint Advisory Group (JAG) accreditation for a further year
- Sustained achievement of the cancer performance targets against the national cancer waiting times standards
- Won the ISD Network Innovation Award for Improving Patient Outcomes & Efficiency with TeleHealth, the informatics programme that allows clinicians to provide video appointments to patients in both the stroke and burns & plastics services
- Successful in two categories of the North West Coast Research and Innovation Awards, winning the Delivery of Commercial Life Science Research award and finalists in the Clinical Research Team of the Year Award
- Received the prestigious North West Coast Research and Innovation Award 'Taking Research into Practice' for research performed by Michael Lloyd, Medical Education & Training Pharmacist



Well-led

National staff survey

- Best acute Trust in the NHS for the third consecutive year with outstanding results, published in March 2019, with the Trust rated as the **best place to work and receive treatment in the NHS**
- Recognised, for the third year running, as being the top acute Trust in the entire country for staff engagement, staff motivation and pride in the quality of care provided to patients
- Highest marks in the following areas:
 - Positive organisational culture of safety
 - Quality of care
 - Staff engagement
 - Staff morale
 - Equality, diversity & inclusion
 - Providing a safe environment for staff

Staff

- Disability Confident Employer accreditation in place until 2020
- The Trust was reassessed for the Navajo Charter Mark in 2019 and was successfully reaccredited. This is an equality mark signifying good practice, commitment and knowledge of the specific needs, issues and barriers facing lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, intersex and questioning (LGBTIQ) individuals
- Health, Work and Wellbeing Service successfully re-accredited for Safe Effective Quality Occupational Health Standards (SEQOHS). Feedback from the SEQOHS Assessors included being nationally recognised as an exemplary service, the assessors made particular reference to the acquisition and streamlining of services with Southport and Ormskirk Hospital NHS Trust and the excellent service being provided to Lead Employer

- Awarded the prestigious Defence Employer Recognition Scheme Silver Award, based on its commitment to helping members of the Armed Forces community gain employment following service for their country
- Jayne Gore, Clinical Lead for Intermediate Care, named Community Nurse of the Year by St Helens CCG for her hard work, commitment & dedication to providing the highest possible care to our local community
- Joanne Battensby won the Midwife of the Year at the British Journal of Midwifery Practice Awards 2019
- Sarah Hynes, Healthcare Assistant, was awarded a Cavell Star Award, which are given to staff who shine bright and show exceptional care
- Sarah Jones, Specialist Midwife for Improvement and Education, won the Royal College of Midwifery's Thompsons Members' Champion Award 2019
- Maternity Services won the Midwifery Team Award for their outstanding contribution to maternity and midwifery services from the Northern Maternity & Midwifery Festival Awards
- Diabetes Team highly commended in both National Hypoglycaemia Awareness Week and Insulin Safety Week for their awareness initiatives and promotional work which took place across the community and hospital sites within the Trust
- Finance Director, Nik Khashu, was named Finance Director of the Year in the Non-Profit Organisation category at the regional Finance Director of the Year awards, sponsored by Accountable Recruitment, Grant Thornton, HSBC and Hill Dickinson

Services and Infrastructure

- Won the Care and Health Integration Award at the Municipal Journal Achievement Awards in London as part of St Helens Cares collaboration
- Library and knowledge services attained a score of 100% compliance in the annual library quality assurance framework, one of only 10 in the country to achieve this
- Won the Hospital Cleaning Award at the Health Business Awards
- Won the Property and Estates Management Service Provider of the Year at the 2019 HSJ Partnership Awards (St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals Trust, New Hospitals, Vinci Facilities and Medirest)
- St Helens & Whiston hospitals were highly commended at the North West in Bloom Awards. St Helens Hospital also received a special award for the best hospital grounds in the North West

The Trust continues to celebrate success internally, hosting our 14th Annual Staff Awards presentation evening in April 2018. The awards celebrate the hard work and achievements of staff in providing excellent patient care every day of the year. The readers of the St Helens Star newspaper awarded the Maternity Department the prestigious People's Choice Award, highlighting the appreciation that patients and their families have for the excellent care they receive.

The Trust held its second annual awards ceremony for our volunteers to recognise the invaluable contribution they make across the organisation.

The Annual Awards, along with the Employee of the Month and the annual Learning and Development Awards are important ways of recognising and rewarding the ongoing dedication and commitment of staff throughout the year. In addition, positive comments received from patients are shared via a weekly 'Thank You Thursday' email sent to all members of staff.

1.2. Statement on quality from the Chief Executive of the Trust

We are pleased to present the Trust's tenth annual Quality Account, which reviews our performance and achievements over the past year, as well as outlining the priorities for improving quality in the coming year.

The Trust's mission continues to be providing high quality health services and an excellent patient experience. Our vision to provide 5-star patient care remains the Trust's primary objective so that patients and their carers receive services that are safe, person-centred and responsive, aiming for positive outcomes every time. The mission and vision continue to be embedded in the everyday working practices of staff throughout the Trust, where delivering 5-star patient care is recognised as everyone's responsibility.

The vision is underpinned by the Trust's values, five key action areas and the ACE behavioural standards of **A**ttitudes, **C**ommunication and the **E**xperiences we create. These are shown in the diagrams overleaf:

St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust's Vision



St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust's Values and ACE Behavioural Standards

ACE Behavioural Standards

Attitudes

- We are all empowered to personally challenge inappropriate behaviour directly, or via escalation through management
- We must never underestimate the power of a sincere apology
- We will act professionally with patients/intercolleagues and treat them with respect, courtesy and kindness
- We will show sensitivity to the needs of others, regardless of race, culture, ethnicity, religion, gender, sexual orientation, age or disability
- We will seek solutions to problems rather than ignoring them, completing or flagging issues
- If things go wrong, we will deal with it appropriately, seeking advice and accurately report the facts
- We will ensure our behaviour, attitude and appearance always reflect a positive image of the Trust and ensure we dress appropriately and in accordance with the uniform policy

Communication

- We will readily provide regular explanation and information to patients/carers
- We will avoid the use of jargon and explain medical terminology as simply as possible
- We will introduce ourselves appropriately by name and job title/role both in person and on the telephone
- We will always wear our name badge so we are easily identifiable
- We will ask for confirmation that the patient/carers/colleague has understood what we have said by giving them the opportunity to ask us questions
- We will not talk over patients, visitors or colleagues
- We will not have personal conversations near patients or visitors
- We will always listen respectfully to other people's views and show we are working as a team
- We will explain delays in a polite manner, and ask the patient or visitor if they are able to wait

Experiences

- We will never share our work problems or personal issues with patients and relatives as it is not conducive to provision of high quality care
- We will greet everyone in a welcoming way, even if we are not expecting them, don't know who they are, or are already occupied
- We will create a safe, calm, clean and quiet environment and take general responsibility to follow up on emergency requirements, ensuring signs are relevant, welcoming and calm
- We will not eat or drink in front of patients in clinical areas
- We will not use the internet or mobile telephones for personal matters in front of patients/visitors. This should be limited to personal time and not during working hours
- We will not do anything that would bring the reputation of the Trust into disrepute, or cause a loss of confidence in its name
- We will welcome new employees and students, ensure they have the support they need to learn the job

www.sthk.nhs.uk

Values



and individual and collective accountability. It focusses on a small number of improvements that are key local health economy priorities. The strategy was refreshed in 2018 and is supported by an implementation plan, which will be monitored by the Quality Committee going forward.

The Trust has delivered a comprehensive programme of quality improvement clinical audits throughout the year, with a number of actions taken as a result of the audit findings (detailed in section 2.4.2 below). Delivery of the quality improvement and clinical audit programme is reported to the Quality Committee via the Clinical Effectiveness Council.

In addition, the Trust has an embedded quality care accreditation programme which measures leadership, patient care, safety and experience on all wards. The Quality Care Accreditation Tool (QCAT) programme ensures that individual ward areas are clear on the quality standards required and any shortfalls requiring an improvement plan. The QCAT incorporates a range of quality indicators into the final score, including CQC fundamental standards, nursing care indicators and harm-free care scores. It also incorporates the Friends and Family Test results, staff training and appraisal rates and patient care and safety standards, including nutrition and hydration, falls, pressure ulcers and infections. Both the nursing care indicators and the QCAT use peer review to provide assurance on the quality of care being provided to patients. The outcomes of the QCAT programme are reported to the Quality Committee via the Patient Experience Council. In 2018-19, the QCAT was supplemented by a programme of in-depth quality reviews based on the CQC's key lines of enquiry. In 2019-20, the format of the QCAT will be reviewed and enhanced to combine the revised key lines of enquiry.

The Trust's vision is the driving force for our focus on continuous improvement, supported by the Clinical Strategy. The strategy outlines the Trust's commitment to improving both quality and efficiency with the specific aim of promoting a culture of continuous value improvement, underpinned by robust systems and processes

Members of the Trust Board and Executive Team continue to visit the wards and departments across the Trust regularly, completing formal quality ward rounds to review quality and performance, noting areas of good practice and any actions taken at a local level to address areas of concern. This provides the opportunity for the Trust Board to see first-hand the care provided to patients and for the clinical areas to provide both quantitative and qualitative information to demonstrate that the services are safe, effective, responsive, caring and well-led in line with the CQC's domains. Representatives from our local Clinical Commissioning Groups (CCGs) are invited to attend the quality ward rounds. A report on the themes arising from the quality ward rounds was presented to the Quality Committee.

We have continued to work with patients and carers during the year to ensure that they are able to influence changes made to our services. Patients are able to present their experiences of the care received, in their own words, as a patient story at the start of our public Trust Board meetings.

We continue to work with our local Healthwatch partners to improve our services, and Healthwatch representatives are key members of the Patient Experience and the Patient Safety Councils, which report to the Trust Board's Quality Committee, ensuring effective representation in the oversight and governance structure of the Trust. Patients, carers, patient representatives and members of the public are invited to attend the open Patient Engagement Group events and to contribute to discussions about the services provided and future plans.

This Quality Account details the progress we have made with delivering our agreed priorities and our achievement of national and local performance indicators, highlighting any challenges and the initiatives undertaken to work towards realising our vision of 5-star patient care. It also includes a summary of our key strategies. It outlines our quality improvement priorities for 2019-20, which were subject to consultation with staff, patient representatives and our commissioners.

I am pleased to confirm that the Trust Board of Directors has reviewed the Quality Account for 2018-19 and confirm that it is a true and fair reflection of our performance and that, to the best of our knowledge, the information contained within it is accurate. We hope that it provides you with the confidence that high quality patient care remains our overarching priority and that it clearly demonstrates the progress we have made.

We recognise that our staff are our greatest asset and we acknowledge their professionalism, commitment and dedication as they work tirelessly to provide excellent care for our patients and their carers. This was reiterated by the excellent rating of 'outstanding' confirmed by the CQC in March 2019. On behalf of the Trust Board, I would like to thank all of our staff who have contributed to our many exceptional achievements, during another extremely challenging year.

Ann Marr

Chief Executive

St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals
NHS Trust



2. Section 2

2.1. About us

2.1.1. Our services

St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust provides a range of acute and specialist healthcare services including, inpatient, outpatient, community, primary care, maternity and emergency services. In addition, the Trust hosts the mid-Mersey Neurological Rehabilitation Unit and the Mersey Regional Burns and Plastic Surgery Unit, providing services for around five million people living in the North West of England, North Wales and the Isle of Man.

The Trust has just over 700 inpatient beds, with circa up to 40 additional escalation beds and provides the majority of its services from two main sites at Whiston and St Helens hospitals, both of which are state-of-the-art, purpose built modern facilities that are well-maintained. Whiston Hospital houses the Emergency Department, the Maternity Unit, children and young people's service and all acute care beds. St Helens Hospital houses day-case and elective surgery, outpatients, diagnostic facilities, rehabilitation beds, the Lilac Centre (a dedicated cancer unit, linked to Clatterbridge Centre for Oncology) and Marshalls Cross Medical Centre (primary care services). The Trust provides outpatient and diagnostic services in a small number of other settings. The Trust also provides intermediate care services at Newton Hospital, which has 30 inpatient beds, and a range of community services, including Contraception and Sexual Health Services (CaSH), frailty, falls, Healthy Heart, continence and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) services. In addition, the Trust provides community adult nursing services in St Helens, which are delivered by North West Boroughs Healthcare NHS Foundation Trust under contract. These services were rated as good by the CQC at their last inspection in 2018-19.

The Intermediate Care Service continues to promote and support the ability to step patients up from their own home, as well as supporting the discharge of patients from hospital. The service has multidisciplinary input including GP, therapy, nursing and geriatrician to ensure patients receive the right level of care.

The role of the Community Frailty Service is to provide Comprehensive Geriatric Assessments (CGA) of frail older people in St Helens, to ensure that there is a plan in place that will support them to live at home. Frailty is a condition associated with aging and is linked to co-morbidity that increases a person's vulnerability to minor stressors and, as such, requires appropriate management to promote wellbeing. The service provides a 2 hour response for those patients who are at risk of hospital admission and a 72 hour response time for assessment of complex frail and multi-morbid patients to help prevent crisis and promote wellbeing. Since April 2018, the Frailty Service have responded to 692 referrals, working alongside community teams to support patients to remain in their own homes/care home and provide advance care planning and end of life care in the community.

The Healthy Heart Team provide the cardiac rehabilitation service for patients who have had a heart attack on an 8 week programme and is based in Fingerpost Medical Centre, in St Helens town centre. The Healthy Heart Team also provide a Community Heart Failure Service to the patients of St Helens, which is a Consultant-led service, delivered with nurse specialists. It offers community clinics and home visits by the nursing team. The COPD service is a community service based in Lowe House in the centre of St Helens town. This is a nurse specialist led/consultant supported service that provides home visits to avoid hospital admissions and early supported discharge from the Trust. This team also support

a pilot service to avoid hospital admissions, where patients are seen as soon as possible and an assessment made to identify if the patient can be supported at home.

The CaSH Service operates clinics across St Helens and Halton. Community based clinics offer predominantly contraception services with asymptomatic screening for sexually transmitted infections (STIs). This includes provision of long acting reversible contraception (LARC). St Helens Hospital provides predominantly STI and HIV based services with an on-site laboratory offering microscopy. The service also has a dedicated health improvement team and TAZ young person's clinic (19 and under) open six days per week at The Millennium Centre in St Helens.

The Trust Board is committed to continuing to deliver safe and high quality care. The Trust has had another extremely challenging year, set within the financial challenges facing the NHS. There has been a continued increase in demand

for the majority of services, as the Trust continues to be one of the busiest acute hospital trusts in the North West of England. It has an excellent track record of providing high standards of care to its population of approximately 350,000 people across St Helens, Knowsley, Halton and South Liverpool, as well as further afield. The Trust was extremely disappointed to have one never event relating to a retained foreign object in theatre, outlined in more detail below. The Trust uses incidents as opportunities for learning and, therefore, has detailed action plans in place to address any issues arising from any investigations undertaken. This is reflected in the findings of the 2018 CQC inspection, which reported many examples of widespread learning.

The Trust has remained busy during 2018-19 and continues to see an increase in activity across most areas, as shown in the table below, particularly in non-elective admissions and ED attendances. The average length of stay for non-elective admissions is 6.2 days.

	2017-18	2018-19	% change
Non-elective admissions	54,423	57,456	5.57%
Elective admissions	49,873	50,443	1.14%
Births	4,094	4,051	-1.05%
Emergency Department attendances (as reported)	111,340	115,734	3.95%
Emergency Department attendances (excluding GPAU)	106,319	109,605	3.09%

2.1.2. Our staff and resources

The Trust's annual total income for 2018-19 was £402 million. We employ more than 5,900 members of staff and we are the lead employer for Health Education North West, Health Education Midlands, Health Education East of England and Palliative Care London and are responsible for nearly 9,000 trainee specialty doctors based in hospitals and general practice (GP) placements throughout England.

The Trust recognises the importance of maintaining high quality patient care in the context of year-on-year increases in demand and on-going recruitment challenges facing the NHS. There are a number of measures in place, which are outlined below, to ensure the right staffing across the Trust, including a focus on recruitment and retention and the creation of new roles.

The Trust strives to meet the best standards of professional care whilst being sensitive and responsive to the needs of individual patients. Clinical services are organised within four care groups, surgery, medicine, community and primary care and clinical support, working together to provide integrated care. A range of corporate support services including human resources, education and training, informatics, research and development, finance, governance, facilities, estates and hotel services, contribute to the efficient and effective running of all our services.

The Trust acknowledges the challenges that it faces in maintaining high quality care when delivering the increased activity levels highlighted above and is working to ensure appropriate staffing levels across all areas, within the financial pressures facing the NHS.

The average staff turnover rate in the Trust for 2018-19 was 9.99%, which is 2.93% better than the national rate of 12.92% for the national

acute sector (latest data available is December 2018).

Significant recruitment challenges remain within specific specialties and for specific roles, in particular: medical, nursing and scientific staff. The Trust is proactive in addressing these challenges and has established the Trust 'brand' via social media as an employer of choice, using online and other media advertisement with open days and nursing campaigns. There have been 67 medical gaps since April 2018 and a number of actions have been taken to address these, including developing new roles such as physician associates, physician assistants and advanced clinical practitioners. The full rollout of e-rostering for the junior doctor and non-training grade medical workforce will be completed by March 2020 and will support improved demand and capacity modelling to ensure the most effective use of the Trust's medical workforce.

In addition, the Trust hosts regular recruitment events and uses international recruitment to ensure vacancies are filled. The Trust has collaborated with Masaryk University, Brno, Czech Republic in the recruitment of sixteen newly qualified doctors who trained in Brno using the English syllabus in 2018. These new recruits joined the Trust for two years as Clinical Fellows at foundation year one and two to fill vacancies resulting from the reduced numbers of allocated posts from the North West Deanery. The scheme returned to Brno in March 2019 to recruit up to sixteen more newly qualified doctors for August 2019, to maintain a constant stream of medical support for the Trust. This provides the opportunity to reduce agency spend and maintain continuity of care. The doctors have the same opportunities to access further training in the North West, which keeps the talent pool local. They are a valuable asset to the Trust and our delivery of patient care.

The Medical Training Initiative (MTI) is a mutually beneficial scheme run by each Royal College that provides non-training grade doctors from overseas with the opportunity to work and train in the UK. The scheme is underpinned by the Diploma in UK Medical Practice, which all MTI candidates are expected to achieve. The Trust has successfully recruited, using the MTI scheme and the British Association of Physicians of Indian Origin (BAPIO) training scheme, three senior fellows in paediatrics, two specialty doctors in emergency medicine and one specialty doctor in radiology.

The Trust is also exploring all possible opportunities to attract and retain nurses, midwives, operating department practitioners (ODPs) and allied health professionals (AHPs), including:

- On-boarding and retention of new and existing staff including flexible working, self-rostering, itchy feet discussions, career clinics, assigning a buddy, welcome packs/information, retire and return initiatives
- An active recruitment programme for the nursing and midwifery workforce, ongoing throughout the year, both locally and internationally
- Delivering apprenticeship programmes, from local health care cadets at further education colleges through to part-time registered nurse degrees and ODP apprenticeships
- Implementation of the new nursing associate role, with 16 trainees commencing the programme in January 2019
- Implementing the St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust Preceptorship, Mentorship and Leadership three year foundation programme to enhance retention, with 121 nurses on the programme from April 2018 to March 2019. This will be updated in line with new Nursing and Midwifery Council (NMC) standards

- Implemented e-rostering, e-job planning and activity manager for allied health professionals to ensure the most effective rostering and planning of work

Nursing and midwifery safer staffing levels are reported externally, with details of the total planned number of hours of registered and care staff measured against the total number of actual hours worked to produce a monthly fill rate as a % for nights and days on each ward. Agency, bank, overtime, extra time hours, discharge coordinators and ward managers' supernumerary management days are included in the actual hours worked totals in accordance with the guidance. The acceptable monthly fill rate is 90% and over, which the Trust consistently exceeds overall. There is Executive Committee scrutiny of the individual areas that fall below 90% each month to review the actions in place to reduce the risk of any recurrence. The safer staffing figure, however, does not analyse skill mix or the impact of temporary staff on a shift-by-shift basis, which can have an impact on the quality of care provided. The Trust has an embedded daily process for reviewing nurse staffing levels across the Trust, with a daily matron huddle, that ensures all areas have appropriate nursing staff and skill mix to support the delivery of high quality care and to maximise patient safety. The introduction of SafeCare Allocate in 2018-19 will enable more effective review of staffing levels and patient acuity by ward going forward.

The Trust also reports Care Hours per Patient per Day (CHPPD), which is calculated from the total actual hours worked in a month divided by the monthly total of the midnight count of inpatients in the ward. The Trust's position is reported monthly as part of the mandated safer staffing report. The wards facing ongoing challenges with recruitment are generally the wards that are unable to meet the safer staffing 90% fill rate consistently.

2.1.3. Our communities

The local population is generally less healthy than the rest of England, with a higher proportion of people suffering from a long-term illness. Many areas suffer high levels of deprivation, which contributes to significant health inequalities among residents, leading to poorer health and a greater demand for health and social care services. Rates of obesity, smoking, cancer and heart disease, related to poor general health and nutrition, are significantly higher than the national average. In addition, it is anticipated that the elderly population will continue to grow significantly over the next ten years, which is likely to increase the incidence of diseases linked to older age and potentially increase demands on health and social care services in our local area. The local population is growing faster than the national average, with an increasing proportion of people aged over 65 as noted above.



2.1.4. Our partners

The Trust continues to be fully engaged in the work of the health and social care partnership in Cheshire and Merseyside, leading on a number of the priority work programmes on behalf of the health system. In line with the requirements of the NHS Long Term Plan, published in January 2019, the Trust is contributing to the development of the Cheshire and Merseyside system five year transformation plan, which will be submitted in autumn 2019. The Trust is working with other providers across Cheshire and Merseyside to create a Pathology Services Network and a Diagnostic Imaging Network to improve access, response times and service resilience for the whole system.

The Trust is also working at “Place” level with partners in its three local health systems of St Helens, Knowsley and Halton to progress plans for creating integrated care systems. This work encompasses partnership working with Local Authorities, other NHS provider trusts and the Clinical Commissioning Groups (CCGs). Each Borough is at a different stage of development with its proposals for Integrated Care Systems and is adopting different solutions based on their geography; however, the common purpose is to facilitate greater collaborative and integrated working across organisational boundaries to improve the health of the population. Some of the structural changes proposed in the NHS Long Term Plan will require national policy or even legislative change, however, the Trust is already working with partners wherever it can to remove barriers and deliver more integrated and personalised care. Examples developed during 2018-19 include:

- Working with Halton, Knowsley and St Helens boroughs, to reduce long stay patients who can be cared for in community settings and do not need to stay in an acute hospital bed

- Expansion of the Community Frailty Service, which provides early assessment and intervention in the Emergency Department or in the individual's home to prevent a hospital admission
 - Continuation of our relationship with North West Boroughs Healthcare NHS Foundation Trust to deliver adult nursing community services for St Helens
 - Creation of four locality community teams in St Helens, who work closely with groups of GP practices to support their local population, whereby community-based services are wrapped around clusters of GP practices in each locality, with integrated adult nursing teams working with practice nurses, physiotherapists and social care, for example, with similar arrangements for children's teams, including mental health services. The community matrons co-ordinate the caseloads, assigning these to the most appropriate team member
 - System working to reduce delayed discharges, with Knowsley playing an integral part of the Safer Start initiative which contributed to meeting demand during this winter
 - Knowsley Discharge Team based on site at Whiston Hospital which is contributing to a positive Knowsley position
 - Developing ways to improve the delivery of health and social care as part of One Halton with system partners
 - Development of reablement team to reduce delayed discharges with St Helens and Halton local authorities, with plans to roll out to Knowsley
 - Working with Halton GPs to develop clinical networks to strengthen the working relationships between the Trust's specialty consultants and GPs to support the management of patients in primary care
 - Working collaboratively with St Helens CCG to improve diabetes care in primary and community care with specialist support, which may be expanded to other CCG areas
 - Working with care homes to provide education and training on pressure ulcer prevention
 - Introduction of a shared care record, which allows all parts of the health and care system to view a patient's information
 - Working together to maximise out of hospital bed capacity to cope with the increased demands of winter
 - Development of the Accident and Emergency Delivery Board for the mid-Mersey region that coordinates and standardises the approach to urgent and emergency care across primary, community and secondary care services, including the inputs from Social Care services that enable the whole system response, to seeing and treating people in the most appropriate setting in a timely manner
 - Further work has also been undertaken to reduce unwarranted variation in clinical services, for example, with the creation of the Hyper Acute Stroke Unit at Whiston Hospital, that provides the initial specialist care and treatment of patients from St Helens, Knowsley, Halton and Warrington who have had a stroke
 - The Trust continues to work with commissioners, Clatterbridge Cancer Centre and other partners to agree the future location of the Eastern Sector Cancer Hub, which will improve the accessibility of chemotherapy services in the mid-Mersey region
- Attendance at the Health and Wellbeing Boards (or equivalent) in our catchment boroughs helps the Trust to respond to the local health improvement priorities and develop strategies with commissioners to target specific population groups.
- The Trust actively participates in the mid-Mersey patient safety and healthcare associated infection collaboratives. This includes working in partnership with primary care, Local Authorities and commissioners to ensure the services we

provide meet the needs of our local population and to share lessons learned as widely as possible. Staff attend and contribute to a wide range of expert clinical groups both locally and nationally to ensure that the Trust continues to provide services based on best practice evidence. This includes;

- The North West intravenous/aseptic non-touch technique (ANTT) forum meetings
- Antimicrobial resistance collaborative which is, for example, standardising the guidance and pathways for urinary tract infection management
- Work on the identification and timely thrombo-prophylactic management of atrial fibrillation to prevent stroke
- Work with the University of Liverpool and Aintree Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust on a collaborative research project on diabetes care
- Collaboration with Edge Hill University on the development of their new undergraduate medicine curriculum to widen access to medical training
- Collaboration with University of Liverpool to widen access to medical training (the Anfield Project)
- Working with Liverpool John Moores University to develop extended roles (including non-medical prescribing) for nurses, physiotherapists and other health professionals

The Trust continues to maintain close working relationships with Healthwatch, NHS Improvement and the Care Quality Commission, as well as local voluntary organisations that work with people in their own communities and homes to prevent hospital admissions.

There is excellent partnership working with the construction and facilities services providers at the Trust which ensures that we continue to offer an excellent environment and facilities for patients, visitors and staff.

2.1.5. Technology and information

This year, the Trust has continued to deliver a portfolio of technological advancements to enhance patient safety and care. Every day in the NHS, information has to be collected, managed, used and shared. Excellent patient care depends on this fast and accurate flow of information.

Informatics continues to strengthen the infrastructure and platforms on which all the Trust's critical systems are based. The team has demonstrated the Trust's commitment to the security of systems and information by gaining Cyber Essentials Security Standards accreditation, a set of technical controls to achieve protection from Internet-borne threats. This provides assurance that the Trust has met a national standard of cyber security recognised by the UK Government.

Informatics have continued to work closely with the operational and clinical teams to strengthen and enhance the security of our clinical and operational systems. The following initiatives have taken place:

- All clinical and administrative systems have been amalgamated under a Unified Threat Management solution, which has been implemented to further enhance the security of our systems and information
- Enhanced monitoring of all systems is now in place and Informatics is working very closely with all Information Asset Owners and Information Asset Administrators in the hospital to ensure systems meet with national requirements
- A dedicated network and security manager commenced in post in April 2018
- Mersey Internal Audit Agency (MIAA) completed an audit of the Trust's Toolkit submission (as required of larger NHS organisations) and the Trust maintained their rating of 'Significant Assurance'

The following initiatives have taken place during 2018-19:

- New Patient Administration System (Medway) was implemented, which is a major building block for the development of a clinical electronic patient record, a key ambition in the Trust's IT strategy. Hardware across the Trust was replaced to support the Medway Patient Administration System project (156 desktops replaced)
- An integrated local care system, the St Helens Shared Care Record, has been launched which seeks to further develop person centred services and support. All local GPs, hospitals, community, mental health and social care services are working together to make it possible for health and social care workers to look at relevant information about patients to make the best clinical decisions

A shared record means that:

- Health and social care workers have the most up-to-date and accurate information about each patient's health, medications, treatment and care plan
- Patients get the right treatment and care in the most appropriate place
- Reduction in duplicate appointments and tests
- Reduced need for patients to repeat their medical or social care history

These two major initiatives will deliver:

- Improvements to the patient journey and decision-making capability
- Clinical transformation across a wider footprint, fostering positive working relationships with health economy partners and providing better care to patients wherever they are treated
- The Electronic Prescribing and Medicines Administration System (ePMA) went live across the Medical Care Group wards and Emergency Department. For patients this will mean

appropriate medication is given, reducing unnecessary life-threatening exposure to adverse drug related accidents and delayed and missed doses. For clinicians this will mean decision support at the point of prescription, improved legibility, a reduction in transcription errors and improved and effective communication between pharmacy, medical and nursing staff

- Wards have been provided with drug trolleys and mobile computer carts to facilitate the revised workflows, enabling optimal use of the ePMA solution
- The network has been upgraded to support the major clinical system initiatives that have taken place during this year and to ensure that it is future-proofed
- The Electronic Transfer of Care to Pharmacy (eTCP) implementation – in March 2018 the Trust began electronic transmission of discharge medication information to Community Pharmacies. The total local health economy savings as a result of Trust referrals was £289,858 (figures based from April to July 2018). Patients will benefit from this initiative because ward pharmacists in the hospital will be able to identify to community pharmacies those patients who will benefit from post-discharge medication reviews. This means that patients are not taking medication that can be stopped or need to be changed after their stay in hospital
- System upgrades have been completed for Sexual Health (Lillie), Audiology (Auditbase) and Pathology (Telepath) systems
- An additional 1700 clinicians across the Trust now have access to the Summary Care Record (SCR). SCR provides summary patient information to clinical staff from GP systems, enabling hospital clinicians to have visibility of patients' prescriptions from primary care
- Following a successful bid to the Innovation Agency in 2017, the Trust has continued to develop the Telehealth project, offering video

consultations as an alternative to physical outpatient appointments following discharge from hospital for patients who have had a stroke and for patients who have a drain in place following plastic surgery. Telehealth provides the technology for consultants to engage with patients via webcam technology. This means that patients and consultants do not need to be in the same location to conduct consultations. This project went live and responses to the initiative from both patients and clinicians have been extremely positive. Home environmental visits were also piloted with Stroke Occupational Therapists.

- For the Telehealth project, the Hospital Trust was shortlisted for: "Best Not-for-Profit Project" at the Digital Leaders Awards, "Telehealth Category" at the Health Business Awards and was the Winner of the 2018 ISD Innovation Award

- Internally, the Health Informatics structure has been reviewed and revised to align services and capability to enhance Digital Systems innovation, delivery and on-going management. There has also been emphasis on business development and ensuring clinical engagement in all phases of system implementations
- The Library and Knowledge Services attained a score of 100% compliance in the annual library quality assurance framework, one of only 10 in the country to achieve this. They were also highly commended in the Trust's staff awards
- The service worked on alignment with other neighbouring healthcare organisations to enable agile working. The Informatics Service is leading on a joined-up Wi-Fi solution (Govroam) which will provide a single Wi-Fi solution across Cheshire and Merseyside enabling staff to work seamlessly across NHS and Local Authority locations.



2.2. Summary of how we did against our 2018-19 Quality Account priorities

Every year, the Trust identifies its priorities for delivering high quality care to patients, which are set out in the Quality Account. The section below provides a review of how well the Trust did in achieving the targets set last year.

2.2.1. Progress in achieving 2018-19 quality goals

Quality Improvement Goal	Outcome delivered	Progress
Maintain effective assessment and monitoring of all patients in the Emergency Department.	Achieved	<p>High compliance with the monitoring of modified early warning scores for patients in line with the requirements of the Trust policy was confirmed by audits.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Modified Early Warning Score (MEWS) undertaken for all patients attending ED • Introduction of patient clinical information displayed on TV screen including MEWS • Electronic MEWS (eMEWS) display at the ED coordinator hub and zone for senior leadership visibility • Allocation of additional resources to ensure patient observations and MEWS completed for patients in waiting areas • Adoption and compliance with Paediatric MEWS • Regular MEWS compliance and escalation audits undertaken
Reduce further the rate of avoidable harm from falls, pressure ulcers and medication incidents	Achieved	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 18% decrease in falls incidents resulting in severe harm or above • No grade 3 or grade 4 hospital acquired pressure ulcers • 18% reduction in avoidable grade 2 pressure ulcers • 8% reduction in total number of avoidable pressure ulcers (all grades) • 86% decrease in medication incidents resulting in moderate harm or above from 2017-18 to 2018-19 • 36% decrease in harmful medication incidents
Implement change as a result of lessons learned from incidents and complaints.	Improved	<p>Audit conducted against the following processes to ensure lessons learned from incidents and complaints shared widely throughout the Trust.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Development and sharing of Trust-wide bimonthly safety briefing • Introduction and embedding of daily safety huddles across all inpatient areas, with sharing of key learning from incidents and complaints • Quarterly Trust learning points identified through mortality review process, shared across multiple forums and governance meetings • Sharing of learning and auditing through weekly senior nurse walk about • Development of weekly incident review process, sharing lessons immediately learned from incidents <p>The audit has demonstrated that all of the above processes are embedded in the organisation. The CQC inspection report published in 2019 highlighted many examples of changes made as a result of lessons learned.</p>

Quality Improvement Goal	Outcome delivered	Progress
Increase the percentage of e-discharge summaries sent within 24 hours to 85%	Not achieved	<p>Achieved 71.3% 2018-19 compared to 69.5% for 2017-18.</p> <p>The Trust is continuing to roll out the electronic prescribing record (ePR) which will support improvement in this area. In addition, the Trust is systematically introducing a series of digital solutions that will ultimately result in more timely electronic discharge summaries. An interim IT solution has been identified and the Trust is working with the Clinical Quality and Performance Group to implement this effectively, in such a way that does not disrupt GP systems and processes.</p>
Improve the effectiveness of discharge planning	Improved	<p>A number of actions have been taken to improve effectiveness of discharge planning including, Home for Lunch initiative with 79% more overnight stay medical patients being discharged before noon in March 2019 compared to March 2018; reducing the number of patients with delayed discharges, in particular super stranded patients with a 25% decrease in reported figures for March 2019 when compared to March 2018;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Throughout the year there has been a consistent improvement in the percentage of overnight medical patients discharged by midday. In March 2019, the Trust achieved 28.4%, however there is further work required to achieve the target of 33% consistently across all in-patient wards • There is targeted work to increase weekend discharges as part of the Executive-led Urgent and Emergency Care Council improvement programme • A Trust-wide communications initiative has been undertaken to improve information to patients and relatives about hospital discharge
Make the most effective use of the skills of the nursing workforce by implementing an electronic system (SafeCare) to ensure optimal deployment of nursing resources	Achieved	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SafeCare has been rolled out successfully to 29 adult inpatient wards at Newton, St Helens and Whiston • The lead nurse has been appointed and commenced in post in January 2019 • Safer staffing fill rates are 96.5% for 2018-19 • Patient acuity/dependency and staffing levels for these wards are entered three times daily into SafeCare and can be viewed and shared across the Trust
Further embed the seven day services clinical standards across the Trust	Improved	<p>7-day service provision has been improved.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The latest NHS England (NHSE) 7-day services audit shows that the Trust is achieving all of the standards for 7-day consultant led services, except patients assessed by a consultant within 14 hours of admission, which has improved to 64%. The Trust is, therefore, making progress towards the 2020 national targets • The Trust has expanded other services to 7 days including the frailty service, extended opening hours for pharmacy at the weekend and increased therapy presence at the weekend

2.3. Quality priorities for improvement for 2019-20

The Trust's quality priorities for 2019-20 are listed below with the reasons why they are important areas for quality improvement. The views of stakeholders and staff were considered prior to the Trust Board's approval of the final list. The consultation included an online survey that was circulated to staff, commissioners and patient representatives, as well as placed on the Trust's website for public participation. In addition, Healthwatch members of the Trust's councils and our commissioners were asked for their views on what should be included in the list of priorities.

The consultation was undertaken using SurveyMonkey with 163 responses received, an increase from 84 received last year. Analysis of the responses has shown overall agreement and support for the proposed quality improvements for 2019-20, in particular the priority to ensure timely and effective assessment and delivery of care within the Emergency Department, which scored 97.5%. Increasing the proportion of patients who report that they have received an appropriate amount of information to meet their needs in a way they can understand scored 95%. Maximising the effectiveness and utilisation of new electronic systems to improve the timeliness and effectiveness of patient care scored 92.5%. A number of respondents suggested that services to support patients with drug and alcohol issues should be considered as a priority. This is one of the 2019-2020 national CQUIN objectives and, therefore, the Trust will continue to focus on this area.

Quality Domain: 1. Safety				
Objective	Rationale	Lead Director	Measurement	Governance Route
Ensure timely and effective assessment and delivery of care within the Emergency Department	The Trust remains committed to providing the timely assessment and delivery of appropriate care to maintain patient safety.	Director of Nursing, Midwifery and Governance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Patients triaged within 15 minutes of arrival First clinical assessment median time of <2 hours over each 24 hour period Compliance with the Trust's Policy for National Early Warning Score (NEWS), with appropriate escalation of patients who trigger 100% compliance with sepsis screening and treatment guidance 	Quality Committee

Quality Domain: 2. Effectiveness				
Objective	Rationale	Lead Director	Measurement	Governance Route
Maximise the effectiveness and utilisation of new electronic systems to improve the timeliness and effectiveness of patient care	The Trust has introduced a number of new electronic systems, including electronic prescribing and administration of medicines (ePMA), National Early Warning Score (NEWS) and e-Handover, which allows medical and nursing handover notes to be available to all team members at all times. The Trust aims to optimise the use of these systems.	Director of Informatics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reduction in medication errors • Improved discharge • Improved communications with GPs and community services • Earlier identification and initiation to treatment for deteriorating patients • Reduction in overall length of stay for patients 	Quality Committee

Quality Domain: 3. Patient experience				
Objective	Rationale	Lead Director	Measurement	Governance Route
Increase the proportion of patients who report that they have received an appropriate amount of information to meet their needs in a way they can understand	Findings from the national inpatient survey indicate that a significant proportion of patients do not receive the right level of information at the right time	Director of Nursing, Midwifery and Governance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Improved scores for responses to patient questionnaires for questions relating to receiving the right level of information 	Quality Committee

2.4. Statements relating to the quality of the NHS services provided by the Trust in 2018-19

The following statements are required by the regulations and enable comparisons to be made between organisations, as well as providing assurance that the Trust Board has considered a broad range of drivers for quality improvement.

2.4.1. Review of services

During 2018-19, the Trust provided and/or sub-contracted £318m NHS services.

St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust has reviewed all the data available to them on the quality of care in all of these NHS services.

The income generated by the NHS services reviewed in 2018-19 represents 100% of the total income generated from the provision of NHS services by St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust for 2018-19.

The other income generated by the Trust relates mainly to education and training, research and development, services to other NHS bodies and private finance initiative (PFI) related income.

2.4.2. Participation in clinical audit

2.4.2.1. Participation in Quality Account audits 2018-19

Annually, NHS England publishes a list of national clinical audits and clinical outcome review programmes that it advises trusts to prioritise for participation and inclusion in their Quality Account for that year. This will include projects that are ongoing and new items.

It should be noted that some audits are listed as one entity on the published list, however will involve a number of individual projects being undertaken under this single heading, e.g. NCEPOD; as detailed below:

- National Confidential Enquiry into Patient Outcome and Death (NCEPOD) - 3 individual audits
- Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD) Audit programme - 3
- Falls And Fragility Fractures Programme (FFFAP) – 2

During 2018-19, 45 national clinical audits and 3 national confidential enquiries covered relevant health services that St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust provides.

During that period, St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust participated in 100% national clinical audits and 100% national confidential enquiries of the national clinical audits and national confidential enquiries which it was eligible to participate in.

The table below shows:

- The national clinical audits and national confidential enquiries that St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust was eligible to participate in during 2018-19.
- The national clinical audits and national confidential enquiries that St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust participated in during 2018-19.
- The national clinical audits and national confidential enquiries that St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust participated in, and for which data collection was completed during 2018-19, are listed below alongside the number of cases submitted to each audit or enquiry as a percentage of the number of registered cases required by the terms of that audit or enquiry.

National Clinical Audits and Clinical Outcome Review Programmes		Eligible	Participated	Rate of case ascertainment % submitted
1.	Acute Coronary Syndrome or Acute Myocardial Infarction: Myocardial Ischaemia National Audit Project (MINAP)	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
2.	BAUS: Nephrectomy Audit	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
3.	BAUS: Percutaneous Nephrolithotomy (PCNL)	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
4.	BAUS: Stress Urinary Incontinence	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
5.	Bowel Cancer: National Bowel Cancer Audit Programme (NBOCAP)	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
6.	Adult Critical Care: Case Mix Programme - Intensive Care National Audit & Research Centre (ICNARC)	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
7.	NCEPOD (Child Health)	Yes	Yes	No current studies running during 2018-19
8.	NCEPOD (Surg/Med) 1. Pulmonary embolism study 2. Acute bowel obstruction 3. Long term ventilation	Yes	Yes	1 - 100% 2 - Active 3 - not eligible for data collection stage
9.	Diabetes (Paediatric) NPDA	Yes	Yes	100%
10.	Elective Surgery: National patient-reported outcomes measures (PROMS)	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
11.	Falls and Fragility Fractures Audit Programme (FFFAP) 1. National Hip Fracture database 2. Physiotherapy hip fracture sprint audit (NHFD)	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
12.	Inflammatory Bowel Disease (IBD) Programme (Registry)	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
13.	Learning Disability Mortality review (LeDeR)	Yes	Yes	Active
14.	Severe Trauma: Trauma Audit & Research Network (TARN)	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
15.	MBRRACE – UK Maternal, Newborn and Infant Clinical Outcome Review Programme	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
16.	National audit-breast cancer in older patients (NABCOP)	Yes	Yes	Active

National Clinical Audits and Clinical Outcome Review Programmes		Eligible	Participated	Rate of case ascertainment % submitted
17.	National Cardiac Arrest Audit (NCAA)	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
18.	1. National Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease Audit Programme (COPD) 2. NACAP Asthma (adults) 3. NACAP Asthma (children)	Yes	Yes	1 - Continuous Monitoring 2 - Active 3 - Active
19.	National Comparative Audit of Blood Transfusion Programme 1. National Comparative Audit Of The Management Of Maternal Anaemia 2018	Yes	Yes	Active
20.	Diabetes (Adult): National Diabetes Audit (Adult) (NDA (A))	Yes	Yes for 2018-19 data set No for 2017-18 data set	Continuous Monitoring
21.	National Emergency Laparotomy Audit (NELA)	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
22.	National Heart Failure (HF)	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
23.	National Joint Registry (NJR)	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
24.	Lung Cancer: National Lung Cancer Audit (NLCA)	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
25.	Neonatal Intensive and Special Care (National Neonatal Audit Programme (NNAP))	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
26.	National Ophthalmology Audit	Yes	Yes	Active
27.	Oesophago-Gastric Cancer: National Audit Oesophago-Gastric Cancer (NAOGC)	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
28.	National Prostate Cancer Audit (NPCA)	Yes	Yes	Active
29.	Sentinel Stroke National Audit Programme (SSNAP)	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
30.	Royal College of Emergency Medicine (RCEM) Feverish Children (CARE IN ED)	Yes	Yes	Active
31.	RCEM Vital Signs In Adults (CARE IN ED)	Yes	Yes	Active
32.	RCEM Venous Thromboembolism (VTE) Risk In Lower Limb Immobilisation (CARE IN ED)	Yes	Yes	Active

National Clinical Audits and Clinical Outcome Review Programmes		Eligible	Participated	Rate of case ascertainment % submitted
33.	Serious Hazards of Transfusion (SHOT): UK National Haemovigilance Scheme	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
34.	National Maternity And Perinatal Audit (NMPA)	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
35.	National Audit of Seizures and Epilepsies in Children and Young People (Epilepsy 12/Rd 3)	Yes	Yes	Active
36.	National Dementia Audit Round 4	Yes	Yes	Completed
37.	National Audit of Care at the End of Life (NACEL)	Yes	Yes	100% completed
38.	UK Cystic Fibrosis Registry	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
39.	National Audit of Intermediate Care (NAIC)	Yes	Yes	Active
40.	British Thoracic Society (BTS) Adult Community Acquired Pneumonia	Yes	Yes	Active
41.	BTS Non-Invasive Ventilation - Adults	Yes	Yes	Active
42.	Mandatory Surveillance of Bloodstream Infections and Clostridium Difficile Infection	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
43.	Reducing the Impact of Serious Infections (antimicrobial resistance and sepsis)	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
44.	Surgical Site Infection Surveillance Service	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
45.	Seven Day Hospital Services	Yes	Yes	Completed
46.	National mortality case record review programme	Yes	Yes	Continuous Monitoring
47.	National Clinical Audit for Rheumatoid and Early Inflammatory Arthritis (NCAREIA)	Yes	Yes	Active
48.	National Audit of Cardiac Rehabilitation	Yes	Yes	Active

2.4.2.2. Other national audits (not on Quality Account list 2018-19)

National audits	Status
STARSURG (Student Audit and Research) audit: Imagine (ileus management)	Completed
Samba 18 (Society of Acute Benchmarking Audit)	Completed
National audit: sleep-deprived EEG	Completed
Operative management of distal radius fractures	Completed
Administration of tranexamic acid in lower limb arthroplasty (attilla)	Completed
National snapshot audit into surgical lower urinary tract symptoms/benign prostatic hyperplasia (LUTS/BPH) management	Completed
RACPC audit programme (Rapid Access Chest Pain Clinic)	Active
Pruritus audit 2019	Active
Flash glucose monitoring audit - Paediatrics (Freestyle Libre)	Active
Flash glucose monitoring audit- Adults (Freestyle Libre)	Active
Fitness for older patients	Active
National audit of seizure management (ED)	Active
Magseed and wire/roll localisation for breast lesions	Active
National audit neo-adjuvant systemic therapy	Active
Breast and cosmetic implant surgery	Active
National 3rd corrective jaw treatment audit	Active
Management of non-gonococcal non-chlamydial urethritis	Active
Each baby counts – National quality improvement project (QIP)	Active
National Perinatal Mortality Review Tool (PMRT) programme	Active
National children and young people diabetes/quality programme	Active
“Flash-mob” audit of intravenous immunoglobulin use in ITP (Immune thrombocytopenic purpura)	Active

The reports of 53 national clinical audits were reviewed by the provider in 2018-19 and St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust has taken and intends to take the following actions to improve the quality of healthcare provided:

Audit Title	Outcome/actions
Critical Care	
Intensive Care National Audit Research Centre (ICNARC)	<p>Whiston Hospital participates in ICNARC – case mix programme – collecting information on all patients admitted to critical care – this information produces quarterly quality reports measuring quality indicators with other critical care units – 100% general critical care units participate within England, Wales & Northern Ireland.</p> <p>This information is shared with all relevant members of staff highlighting areas of excellence & any areas that require review, with robust systems in place to ensure information is reviewed and relevant action plans are implemented. Previously Whiston was a national outlier for delayed discharges from critical care and through the processes mentioned there has been improvements to reducing the amount of delayed discharges from critical care.</p>
General Medicine: Department of Medicine for Older People	
National audit of dementia - round 3 (findings)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Improve delirium screening by increasing the use of the 4AT test • Integrate the Forget-Me-Not document with nursing documentation on activities of daily living to improve collection of personal information • Increase staff awareness of the availability of snacks for patients with dementia out of hours
Spotlight audit: Delirium screening and assessment	<p>Planned actions</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Development and implementation of a screening tool • Update of the Trust guidance on delirium management
Emergency Department	
RCEM National Sedation Audit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A new sedation pathway and patient information leaflet have been developed
RCEM Pain in Children Audit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Further work will be undertaken to improve the re-evaluation of pain after analgesia. • Triage teaching has been delivered to paediatric nurses including discussion on pain assessment
Acute Coronary Syndrome or Acute Myocardial Infarction: MINAP	
Myocardial Ischaemia National Audit Project MINAP	A new national database has been implemented in March 2019 to collect data and facilitate reporting

Audit Title	Outcome/actions
NCEPOD: (National Confidential Enquiry into Patient Outcome and Death)/Child Health Programme	
The Trust has participated in all eligible studies during 2018-19. Completed study reports have been disseminated and reviewed with report recommendations implemented or planned.	
Current Active Studies: 1. Long Term Ventilation 2. Acute Bowel Obstruction	Completed Studies – Awaiting National Report: 1. Pulmonary Embolism 2. Mental health conditions in young people
NCEPOD: Acute Heart Failure Study	Discussion points: As specified in the NCEPOD recommendations a protocol for the management of these patients is to be developed, as well as a Heart Failure Multi-Disciplinary Team.
Orthopaedics	
Administration of Tranexamic Acid (TXA) in lower limb arthroplasty (ATILLA) National Collaborative audit	The local results demonstrated that blood loss was less in patients receiving TXA.
Paediatrics	
National Paediatrics Diabetes audit 2016-17 report	Planned Actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Telephone reminders to be sent 1 week prior and on the day of appointment to improve clinic attendance and reduce DNA rates • Review the feasibility of appointing diabetes administration staff to assist the clinical team • Continue monthly meetings to monitor patients with high HbA1c and link with key workers
Sentinel Stroke National Audit Programme (SSNAP)	
SSNAP	Service developments continue to be delivered to sustain the improved outcomes from the audits.
Severe Trauma: Trauma Audit & Research Network (TARN)	
TARN	Reports and TARN dashboard are continuously reviewed locally and by the Cheshire & Mersey Major Trauma Network/Operational Delivery Network - no further clinical actions. To review possible changes to reporting structure/ standards to reflect more accurate activity reporting and appropriateness of standards for Trauma Units.

2.4.2.3. Local clinical audit information

The reports of 179 local clinical audits were reviewed by the provider in 2018-19 and St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust has taken and intends to take the following actions to improve the quality of healthcare provided:

Audit Title	Outcome/actions
Burns & Plastics	
Audit of referral timing for facial palsy patients in Merseyside	Re-educate primary and secondary care staff on St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust service and current NICE guidelines with a point to encourage early referral. Re-educate based on current evidence (Scottish Bell's palsy study) and re-write a treatment pathway for treatment of suspected facial nerve palsy in ED. Discuss the findings with NICE to put forward a multidisciplinary review based on patient outcomes.
Emergency Department	
Review of HIV testing uptake in Emergency Department	Actions: Completed 'a message of the week' for Emergency Department (ED) teaching. Audit results poster displayed around the ED department and re-audit for a day, with the findings presented at an ED teaching session for consultants and registrars at the end of June 2018.
Management of C-Spine Injuries in the ED	Key success: All patients immobilised and discussed with Neuro-centre. Main outcome: Introduction of C-Spine injury pathway by August 2019 Re-audit planned in the next audit year: 2019-20
Do not attempt cardiopulmonary resuscitation (DNACPR)	100% compliance achieved in most criteria, the remainder fell just short. Recommendation of monthly snapshots to be undertaken going forward
Open Fracture Audit	The audit has led to the development of an open fracture pathway and the addition of a camera for the department.
De-brief after a critical incident (QIP)	This has resulted in a massive impact on awareness of staff well-being. This practice is being implemented now in other departments and other EDs.
Critical Care	
Audit of arterial cannulation in critical care	100% aseptic technique. Successful atrial cannulation at 1st and 2nd attempts higher than audit target. All awake patients had infiltration of local anaesthetic, therefore, no actions needed

Audit Title	Outcome/actions
General Medicine: Endoscopy Global Rating Scale (GRS) audit programme	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rectal biopsies in diarrhoea audit • Upper gastrointestinal (UGI) endoscopy – acute upper GI bleed • Quality & safety – of lower gastrointestinal (LGI) endoscopist • Quality & safety of UGI endoscopy peg insertion • Quality & safety of UGI endoscopy • Audit of 30-day mortality & 8-day readmissions post endoscopic procedure • Safety & sedation – use of reversal agents • Comfort during endoscopic procedures audit • Patient Comfort survey 	<p>A programme of mandated audits are undertaken each year and presented in January and July, to assess compliance with the GRS standards.</p> <p>Results are discussed from these audits and any necessary actions implemented - some audits are repeated again as part of this rolling programme.</p>
General Medicine: Acute Medical Unit	
Time to first consultant review: current practice on the acute medical unit (AMU)	Actions: Assessment bays established on 1B. New consultant appointments to improve flow/bed pressures
Venous-thromboembolism (VTE) Champion of the Day: Improving VTE Risk Assessment Completion within 24 hours (QIP)	Significant improvement in patients having VTE risk assessment documented and carried out within 24 hours following introduction of VTE Champion.
General Medicine: Cardiology	
Lipid management following Acute Coronary Syndrome (ACS) with compliance against NICE guidelines	<p>To continue to liaise with the laboratory to link the first troponin with a full lipid profile.</p> <p>The cardiology team are going to work to develop some educational material for ED and Medical Assessment Unit to ensure patients post-ACS have lipid profiles measured during admission (prior to high-intensity statin commencement) so that response to therapy can be monitored.</p> <p>To reinforce the structured review of lipids in post-myocardial infarction clinic and advocate patients have their lipids re-checked at 6 months and 1 year.</p> <p>Specialist nurses to continue to tell patients to attend for lipid monitoring in the community at 3 months post-discharge (same information to be passed to GP).</p> <p>This will continue to be achieved through the small changes made to discharge paperwork given to the patient.</p>

Audit Title	Outcome/actions
General Medicine: Dermatology	
Regional azathioprine audit. Azathioprine is a thiopurine immunosuppressant drug that occupies an important place in the management of many autoimmune and inflammatory skin diseases	Creation of an azathioprine pre-treatment pro forma and information bundle to cover all aspects of pre-treatment screening and patient information. A draft pro forma has been produced.
General Surgery	
Surgical post-take ward round sheets	Implement changes and review efficacy of these newly improved ward round sheets during a third cycle. Also aim to improve the documentation of VTE assessment in the next audit cycle.
General Surgery - Burney Breast Unit	
Breast documentation re-audit	Overall improvement in documentation. Good feedback from clinicians and patients regarding ease of form. Education given to clinicians completing forms.
Palliative Care	
Bereavement specification audit	Amend Trust policy and e-learning module for all staff, End of Life steering group tasked the Specialist Palliative Care Team to provide scope and education. Bereavement staff contacting adult safeguarding in first instance for advice on bereavement procedure for next of kin who lack capacity.
Paediatrics	
Use of screening tool for the assessment of malnutrition in paediatrics (STAMP) nutritional screening tool of paediatric wards at Whiston Hospital	STAMP training to be provided for ward staff, ward managers to make staff available for training.
Management of Kawasaki disease (previously called mucocutaneous lymph node syndrome), a common inflammatory disease, caused by various immunological processes and possibly triggered by infectious agents of childhood	Pro forma for investigations in guideline. Patient leaflet to include echo follow up.

Audit Title	Outcome/actions
Paediatrics (continued)	
Management of neonatal weight loss to aid breastfeeding/prevent re-admission	Triage form to be completed with either patients details for admission to Children's Observation (ChObs) ward or advice given, these should then be scanned in patient notes. Develop a patient leaflet to be given to new mums on discharge from Ward 2E. Ensure scales are calibrated regularly and staff are educated on correct weighing procedure and calculation of weight %.
Prolonged jaundice care audit	Implementation of an integral pathway. Prompts on new pathway regarding questions and full training to be given on use of pathway. One person being responsible for chasing results therefore reduces risk of error. Implementation of a new prolonged jaundice service.
Management of prolonged and recurrent febrile seizures in children	Re-education of staff, integrate first aid information into febrile seizures leaflet, discussion of electroencephalogram (EEG) with Epilepsy Team if required.
Obstetrics & Gynaecology	
Compliance with Merseyside Child Death Overview Panel (CDOP) multi-agency safe sleeping guidance	Some positive results, recording of discussions needs improvement. Actions: All midwives reminded to record safe sleep discussion and distribution of safe sleep resources.
Audit of maternity and new born records for antenatal and new born screening quality assurance	Contact women early. Midwives to arrange booking appointments before 10 weeks. Results are recorded in the first trimester screening diary and the date the letter is sent out is also recorded. New-born blood spot (NBBS) failsafe is currently being addressed, to be monitored by community clerks and any outstanding after 2.30pm should be escalated to management.
Orthopaedics	
Reasons for delayed discharges of knee arthroscopy re-audit	Plan day case surgeries early on the list. On-call registrar to review patients in the evening to avoid any delayed discharges.
Fractured Neck of Femur Consent Form audit	The audit found not all risk factors were listed. Immediate actions: A full list of risk factors to be used for #NOF has been circulated amongst the orthopaedic department staff and Trainees are to be made aware of this in induction, to ensure all the information is imparted to patients.
Pathology – Biochemistry	
Audit of short synacthen tests (SSTs) A synacthen test checks the function of the adrenal gland. It can help to see whether the body is producing enough steroid hormone (cortisol).	100% of short synacthen tests were performed correctly and the majority interpreted correctly. The criteria for the interpretation of these tests were not clear in some cases. Actions: The Biochemistry standard operating procedure for interpretation of short synacthen tests has now been updated.

Audit Title	Outcome/actions
Pathology – Microbiology	
Clinical review to improve inpatient management of staphylococcus (S) aureus bacteraemia (QIP)	All adult S aureus bacteraemia at Whiston now receive inpatient infection specialist clinical review.
Quality & Risk – Nursing	
Pain assessment audit	The findings indicated good compliance - no follow up actions needed.
Research, Development and Innovation (RDI)	
Research: compliance with good clinical practice re consent, record keeping, storage	<p>Overall, there have been improvements in most areas since the previous audit. However, some areas for further improvement still remain.</p> <p>Actions: Ensure each task is documented individually on research project delegation logs. Include delegation logs on progress reports.</p> <p>Ensure that complete copies of the consent form/patient eligibility checklist or information leaflet are scanned into the appropriate section.</p> <p>Re-iterate the importance of documenting patient eligibility and the consent-taking process at research meetings.</p> <p>Investigate if principal investigators (PI) reviews were conducted for the relevant studies (STOPPIT-2 and IONA).</p> <p>Research tabs and alert indicators added and updated.</p> <p>Research, Development and Innovation Administrator to highlight any documents not scanned in colour for Clinical Trials Involving Medicinal Products (CTIMP) studies, and to amend and update accordingly.</p>
Resuscitation Services	
Do not attempt cardio-pulmonary resuscitation (DNACPR) and unified (u) DNACPR documentation audit	<p>Areas of good practice were demonstrated, some require improvements.</p> <p>Actions: Ensure Mental Capacity Act assessment forms are available on wards to assist with documentation. Production and circulation of training video to instruct how this must be documented.</p> <p>Education to doctors and nurses to continue, highlight all key concerns via a video to be produced and mandatory training.</p> <p>To move to sole use of the uDNACPR documentation.</p>
Sexual Health	
Safeguarding audit – sexual health	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Staff advised to ensure all safeguarding related documentation to be fully completed. • Staff to be advised to notify safeguarding of any attendance of a young person with a Child Sexual Exploitation (CSE) alert noted. • Completion of documentation to be discussed in supervision sessions. • Audit tool to be reviewed and a further audit to be completed in 12 months' time: July 2019.

Audit Title	Outcome/actions
Trust-wide/Corporate	
Trust-wide consent audit programme 2017-18	<p>Improvements were demonstrated across the board from the 1st round (initial) to the 2nd round (re-audit)</p> <p>Action: the Consent Audit programme to be reviewed with a view to moving to electronic data collection (similar to the Trust's record keeping audit programme)</p>
Annual generic record keeping audit programme (Trust wide): 2017-18	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • High standards of clinical documentation were found in many areas across the Trust, and several specialties regularly achieved 100% compliance with some standards. • Further improvements are needed for some areas. • Review of the audit analysis process to make it more efficient and timely. • Include additional information in the current guidance notes to assist staff during the data collection process. • Continue to liaise with specialties, directorates and Care Groups regarding the audit process and how to refine and improve compliance with the record keeping process. • Provide one to one/group facilitation to ensure clinical staff are fully aware of the reasons for the audit and how to comply with the record keeping audit process. • Roll out Trust wide 'bite size' record keeping training sessions, for all staff to attend on a 'drop in' basis, ad hoc bespoke sessions will also be offered on request for any groups of staff who may find it difficult to leave clinical areas.



2.4.3. Participation in clinical research

Evidence suggests that NHS trusts that support high quality patient-centred research can show better healthcare outcomes for patients.

St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust is committed to providing the best possible care to patients and acknowledges that research has been widely recognised as being an important factor in providing high quality care for healthcare organisations.

Research has built the NHS we have today.

Getting involved in healthcare research could help shape the NHS for the future, discovering life-saving treatments, uncovering the secrets behind diseases and developing the answers to the problems causing ill health today.

Every year, more than half a million people take part in health research. Patients and members of the public also help design research studies and advise what our priorities for future research should be.

The Trust is a partner organisation in the North West Coast Clinical Research Network (NWC CRN) and works closely with them to ensure a culture of research and innovation is embedded within the Trust. This partnership working helps the Trust to support the National Institute for Health Research (NIHR) commitments, including improving the quality, speed and co-ordination of clinical research by removing the barriers within the NHS, unifying systems, improving collaboration with industry and streamlining administrative processes.

The Trust employs a team of specialist research staff to support clinical research across the organisation and to increase recruitment to high quality clinical trials and other robust research studies. The Trust has exceeded its recruitment target for the third consecutive year, with the numbers for 2018-19 being our highest recorded over the three year period.

During 2018-19, the Trust was involved in 84 active studies and the NIHR supported 72 of these, with the remaining 12 studies being local or student studies.

The number of patients receiving relevant health services provided or sub-contracted by St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust in 2018-19 that were recruited during that period to participate in research approved by a research ethics committee/Health Research Authority: 1388 recruited to NIHR adopted studies, which exceeds the proposed target of 600.

The Trust has impressive research activity across a wide range of clinical specialties. Since 1st April 2018, the RDI department produced RDI permission for 26 new studies, of which 25 were NIHR portfolio adopted studies. The following table displays the specialties of the new studies:

Speciality	Number of Studies – NIHR Portfolio	Non – Portfolio
Anaesthetics /Surgery	1	
Cancer	3	
Care of the Elderly	1	
Critical Care	3	
Diabetes	1	
Gastroenterology	9	
Obstetrics & Gynaecology	3	1
Rheumatology	2	
Stroke	1	
Vascular Surgery	1	

2.4.3.1. Performance in initiation and delivery of research (PID data)

Performance benchmarks have been introduced by the National Institute of Health Research (NIHR) for the time taken to initiate and deliver clinical trials within the NHS. The Trust's performance against these benchmarks is published quarterly and the reports are available at:

<https://www.nihr.ac.uk/research-and-impact/nhs-research-performance/performance-in-initiating-and-delivering-research/performance-information-on-the-initiation-and-delivery-of-clinical-research.htm>

2.4.3.2. Commercially sponsored studies

We have continued to increase our participation in commercially sponsored studies, with 10 commercial studies active within the Trust.

2.4.3.3. Key achievements

The Trust has been recognised as a top recruiting site in a number of areas of research:

- In September 2018, the Trust was again recognised as being one of the top recruiters to the mammographic surveillance in breast cancer patients aged 50 years or over (MAMMO 50) study
- Also in September 2018, the Trust was the top recruiter to the PD COMM study (speech and language therapy interventions for people with Parkinson's disease)
- The Rheumatology Department was alongside three other trusts to have recruited the most MMF patients to the BILAG BR study (Biologics Prospective Cohort: the Use of Novel Biological Therapies in the Treatment of Systemic Lupus Erythematosus (SLE))

2.4.3.4. Other Achievements

- Providing a research management service to Southport and Ormskirk Hospital NHS Trust research department, resulting in the team winning the Trust's 2018 Time to Shine award, which was presented to the team at an awards ceremony in Formby Hall on 12th October 2018
- In March 2019, the Trust was successful in two categories of the North West Coast Research and Innovation awards, winning the Delivery of Commercial Life Science Research award and finalists in the Clinical Research Team of the year award. This was an outstanding achievement and demonstrates our commitment to offering patients and public the opportunity to take part in research.
- Congratulations to Michael Lloyd, Medical Education and Training Pharmacist, whose, "Exploring the impact of pharmacist-led feedback on prescribing behaviour: A qualitative study" was selected as the Best Paper 2018 by the Research in Social and Administrative Pharmacy Journal
- Dr Seamus Coyle, Consultant in Palliative Care, initiated another exciting study, "Investigation of biological changes in urine in lung cancer – a pilot study". The study analyses the urine of patients with lung cancer to look at changes as the disease progresses towards the end of life. Initial results are promising and there are plans to extend the research to include patients with different cancers. The Trust made a major contribution to the study by recruiting a large proportion of the inpatients required for the study
- Currently, lung cancer is number one cause of cancer deaths in UK, with >40,000 new patients every year. In September 2018, a 'ground breaking' study to find personalise Lung Cancer Treatment started at the Trust. The observational clinical trial aims to develop and validate the Cancertain™ Test which will personalise the cancer treatment for lung cancer patients

- The Gastroenterology Team has continued to successfully expand its commercial research portfolio. 2018-19 was a very busy year for the team and they are now recognised as a site that exceeds in this specialty
- During 2018-19, we opened three new NIHR portfolio studies in Intensive Care, supported by Dr Ascanio Tridente, Consultant in Intensive Care, and Mr Greg Barton, Specialist Pharmacist in Intensive Care, who agreed to act as Principal Investigators
- All of our other research specialties, including Diabetes, Stroke, Cardiology, Paediatrics and Rheumatology, have worked extremely hard and with their input we are pleased that the annual NIHR recruitment target for 2018-19 was met during quarter 3.
- We are extremely pleased that the CRN NWC has successfully recruited staff from the Trust into local Specialty Research Group (SRG) leads in the following areas :
 - Palliative Care - Dr Seamus Coyle
 - Plastic and Hand Surgery – Mr Rowan Pritchard Jones
 - Breast Cancer – Miss Tamara Kiernan
- International Clinical Trials Day is celebrated around the world, on or near 20th May each year, to raise awareness of the importance of clinical trials for advances in research and healthcare. In May 2018, the Research Team celebrated with a stall promoting the campaign. This was a great opportunity to promote clinical research trials and let patients, staff and the public know more about the research trials on offer at our Trust.

These achievements are only possible because of the continued support from the committed consultants, who take the role of Chief and Principal Investigators, the Research Nurses, Research Administrative teams, support services and, most importantly, the patients, who give up their time to take part in clinical trials.

98 publications (research and academic) have resulted from our involvement in both NIHR and Non-NIHR research, which shows our commitment to transparency and our desire to improve patient outcomes and experience across the NHS.

2.4.3.5. Research aims for 2019-20

Our aims for 2019-20 are to:

- Include research in the Trust strategy and vision
- Promote and increase engagement in Trust research, by raising awareness of research activities amongst all staff and patients
- Increase research in areas new to research and those areas that are currently research naïve
- Work in partnership with the Clinical Research Network to ensure the NIHR high level objectives are met
- Generate research funding by increasing the number of commercially sponsored studies in our portfolio
- Ensure high quality delivery of studies, to time and on target

These are key roles for our clinicians as they work in partnership with the research network locally. They co-ordinate and oversee activity at a national (UK) level, providing a national forum to share good practice, successes, opportunities and challenges, helping influence and shape the clinical research environment.

- The Trust promoted Research and Innovation to staff and patients via:
 - Social media, and regularly posting good new stories on the Trust's Facebook and Twitter
 - TV screens in the Diabetes outpatient clinic
 - Library Services
 - Training and Education

2.4.4. Clinical Goals agreed with commissioners

A proportion of St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust income in 2018-19 was conditional on achieving quality improvement and innovation goals agreed between the Trust and any person or body they entered into a contract, agreement or arrangement with for the provision of relevant health services, through the Commissioning for Quality and Innovation payment framework.

Further details of the agreed goals for 2018-19 and for the following 12-month period are shown in the tables below:



2.4.4.1. CQuIN targets 2018-19

Commissioner	Scheme Title
Clinical Commissioning Group (CCG)/ Integrated Care System (ICS)	Sustainability and Transformation Fund (STF)
CCG Acute	NHS Staff Health & Wellbeing: 1a] Staff survey 1b] Healthy food 1c] Flu vaccine
CCG Acute	2a] Timely identification of patients with sepsis 2b] Timely treatment of sepsis 2c] Assessment of a clinical antibiotic review for patients with sepsis 2d] Antibiotic consumption (agent & duration)
CCG Acute	Improving services for people with mental health needs who present to A&E
CCG Acute	Advice & guidance
CCG Acute	9a] Tobacco screening 9b] Tobacco brief advice 9c] Tobacco referral & medication offer 9d] Alcohol screening 9e] Alcohol brief advice or referral
Specialised Commissioning	Right setting: to ensure patients are cared for in the most clinically appropriate setting
Public Health England	NHS staff health & wellbeing
Public Health England	Dental e-referrals & managed clinical network involvement
CCG Community	NHS Staff Health & Wellbeing: 1a] Staff survey 1c] Flu vaccine
CCG Community Including Cardiac	9a] Tobacco screening 9b] Tobacco brief advice 9c] Tobacco referral & medication offer 9d] Alcohol screening 9e] Alcohol brief advice or referral
CCG Community	Improving the assessment of wounds
CCG Community	Personalised Care & Support Planning

The proposed CQuIN targets for 2019-20 will be published on the Trust's website at www.sthk.nhs.uk following agreement with commissioners.

2.4.5. Statements from the Care Quality Commission (CQC)

The CQC is the independent regulator for health and adult social care services in England. The CQC monitors the quality of services the NHS provides and takes action where these fall short of the fundamental standards required. The CQC uses a wide range of regularly updated sources of external information and assesses services against five key questions to determine the quality of care a Trust provides, asking if services are:

- Safe
- Effective
- Caring
- Responsive to people's needs
- Well-led

If it has cause for concern, it may undertake special reviews/investigations and impose certain conditions.

The latest comprehensive CQC inspection, using the new approach, took place in July and August 2018. The Use of Resources review was undertaken on 5th July, the unannounced inspection took place during the week commencing 16th July, the inspection of Marshalls Cross Medical Centre was completed on 14th August and the planned well-led review completed during the week commencing 20th August.

Teams of inspectors visited Whiston, St Helens and Newton hospitals and the Trust's directly provided community and primary care services during the inspection period to talk to patients, carers and staff about the quality and safety of the care provided. They reviewed care records and observed the care provided. The Trust was able to demonstrate to the inspection team the high standard of work that is undertaken on a daily basis to ensure patients receive excellent care.

St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust is required to register with the Care Quality Commission and its current registration status is registered without conditions.

The Care Quality Commission has not taken enforcement action against St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust during 2018-19.

St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust has not participated in any special reviews or investigations by the Care Quality Commission in 2018-19.

St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust is subject to periodic reviews by the Care Quality Commission and the last review was in July/August 2018. The CQC's assessment of the Trust following that review was outstanding.

CQC ratings table for St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust March 2019

Safe	Effective	Caring	Responsive	Well-led	Overall
Good	Good	OUTSTANDING	Good	OUTSTANDING	OUTSTANDING

The Trust's Emergency Department was rated as requires improvement for the responsive and safety domains, with action plans in place to address the recommendations as outlined in the section below.

As part of the 2018 inspection, the CQC inspected Marshalls Cross Medical Centre, which is a new service that the Trust was contracted to provide from March 2018. The inspection identified three areas where the Trust has not yet met the requirements of the CQC regulations for this service. The Trust had already taken action to start to address the issues identified at the time of the inspection in August 2018.

The Trust intends to take the following action to address the points made in the CQC's assessment:

- Deliver comprehensive action plans to address the areas of non-compliance in Marshalls Cross Medical Centre and all should do recommendations, including those areas where the Trust requires improvement in the ED:
 - Ensuring all applicable staff within the ED receive level three children's safeguarding training
 - Continuing attempts to achieve key national targets to enable timely care of patients in ED, including arrival to initial assessment times and the Department of Health decision to admit, transfer or discharge target
 - Clarifying and monitoring the quality and completion of ligature and clinical risk assessments to ensure they are completed as appropriate for all patients requiring them in ED



St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust has made the following progress by 31st March 2019 in taking such action:

Processes for the following have been strengthened in relation to Marshalls Cross Medical Centre:

- Follow up of uncollected prescriptions
- Monitoring of NICE guidelines
- Managing patients on high risk medicines
- Undertaking risk assessments
- Audit programme to monitor quality and identify areas for improvement
- Ensuring sufficient numbers of skilled and experienced staff to provide formal clinical leadership

2.4.6. Learning from deaths

2.4.6.1. Number of deaths

During Quarters 1-3 2018-19, 1146 of St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust's patients died. This comprised the following number of deaths which occurred in each quarter of that reporting period:

365 in the first quarter;

374 in the second quarter;

407 in the third quarter;

Data unavailable for Q4 as data reported a quarter behind.

By end of Q3, 431 case record reviews and 16 investigations have been carried out in relation to 1146 of the deaths included in item 2.4.6.1

In 16 cases, a death was subjected to both a case record review and an investigation. The number of deaths in each quarter for which a case record review or an investigation was carried out was:

134 in the first quarter;

146 in the second quarter;

151 in the third quarter;

Data unavailable for Q4 as data reported a quarter behind.

4 representing 0.4% of the patient deaths during the reporting period are judged to be more likely than not to have been due to problems in the care provided to the patient.

In relation to each quarter, this consisted of:

2 representing 0.5% for the first quarter;

2 representing 0.5% for the second quarter;

0 representing 0.0% for the third quarter;

Data unavailable for Q4 as data are reported a quarter behind.

These numbers have been estimated using the St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust Royal College of Physicians Structured Judgement Review (SJR).

171 case record reviews and 9 investigations completed after 31-12-2017 which related to deaths which took place before the start of the reporting period.

3 representing 0.6% of the patient deaths before the reporting period, are judged to be more likely than not to have been due to problems in the care provided to the patient. This number has been estimated using the St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust Structured Judgement Review (SJR) (which uses NCEPOD Quality Score and RAG rating similar to Royal College of Physicians SJR and consistent with Royal College of Physicians and NHS Improvement guidance. This represents the final position for Quarter 4 of 2017-18.

4 representing 0.2% of the patient deaths during 2017-18 are judged to be more likely than not to have been due to problems in the care provided to the patient. This represents all four quarters of 2017-18.

2.4.6.2. Summary of learning from case record reviews and investigations

The Trust has focussed on two key learning priorities for each quarterly report to the Trust Board and is establishing a database that collates all learning from deaths, incidents, complaints, PALS and litigation into a single repository for quarterly thematic analysis and sharing. Key lessons shared in 2018-19 are below:

- Clear and accurate records are essential for clinical decision-making and high quality patient care. Document each patient interaction as soon as possible. The record should capture what happened during a consultation and inform colleagues who see the patient subsequently, supporting continuity of care

- Older people are more susceptible to sepsis than younger adults. The initial clinical presentation may be non-specific, so clinicians should have a higher index of suspicion and lower threshold for treatment in older people
- Where there is concern that a patient is at risk of falling out of bed, a low rise bed must be used. Bedrails are likely to introduce more risk and should never be used as a form of restraint
- If a patient has a suspected hip fracture and the plain X-ray is normal, but the patient cannot mobilise, request a CT scan within 24 hours. After a normal CT scan if the patient can still not mobilise, please ask the responsible consultant to speak to a radiologist to discuss MRI scan
- Patients who fall in hospital frequently have incomplete falls risk assessments. It is vital that nursing staff complete the risk assessments fully and individualise the care plans to protect patients and the staff caring for them, ensuring the communication works to deliver the right plan for each patient
- When a patient is suspected of having a gastrointestinal (GI) bleed, review their medications and temporarily withhold antiplatelet medication (including aspirin) and anticoagulants till they have had the endoscopy. When in doubt, consult a senior. People with acute upper GI bleeding who take aspirin for secondary prevention of vascular events and in whom haemostasis has been achieved at endoscopy are advised to continue on low-dose aspirin
- Some hospital patients face an uncertain recovery and are sick enough to die despite active treatment. Please ensure that do not attempt cardio-pulmonary resuscitation (DNA-CPR) and ceilings of treatment are proactively discussed with the patient, their family and people important to them. Symptom control treatments must be provided in parallel with active treatment.

Please also consider referral to the specialist palliative care team and note that active and palliative treatments are not mutually exclusive

- When patients present with swallowing difficulties and they are frail or approaching the end of life, do not make them nil by mouth as a "reflex". Open discussions with the patient and their relatives about the risks and benefits of continuing oral feeding and involve the Speech and Language Therapy (SALT) team

2.4.6.3. Actions taken resulting from learning

The Trust's Learning from Deaths Policy was updated in January 2019 to incorporate the principles laid down in the National Quality Board document "Learning from Death: Guidance for NHS trusts on working with bereaved families and carers".

Lessons identified from the structured judgement reviews have been shared with the Trust Board, Quality Committee, Finance & Performance Committee, Clinical Effectiveness Council, Patient Safety Council, Patient Experience Council, Grand Rounds, Team Brief, Intranet Home Page, global email, Medical Care Group (Governance), Surgical Care Group (Governance), Medical Care Group Directorate Meetings, Surgical Care Group Directorate Meetings and Clinical Support Directorate meetings.

2.4.6.4. Impact of actions taken

The effectiveness of learning is assessed by audit of Datix, serious incidents, complaints, PALS, Litigation and Mortality Reviews for evidence of failure to deliver these priorities. Systematic assessment of effectiveness is necessarily two quarters behind priorities, allowing time for sharing and then time to establish that learning has become embedded.

2.4.6.5. Trust approach to learning from deaths

A summary of the Trust's approach to learning from deaths is outlined below:

Total Deaths in Scope¹

Check against NWB downloaded LD List 'Learning Difficulties Death'	LeDe R Death Review ²
Check against MHA and DOLS list 'Severe Mental Illness Death'	SJR ³
Check if age <18year but >28 days 'Child death'	SIRI & Regional Child Death Overview Panel (CDOP)
Check if <28 days and >24 weeks gestation 'Neonatal death or Stillbirth'	Joint Perinatal Audit Meeting (SIRI), & C&M 'Each Baby Counts' Panel
Check if spell includes obstetric code (501) 'Maternal Death'	STHK STEIS/SIRI & National EMBRACE system (also perinatal)
Check against current year 'Alert List' 'Alert Death' ⁵	SJR
Check DATIX for SIRI Investigation 'SIRI Death'	SIRI
Check DATIX for complaints/PALS/staff concerns 'Concern Death'	SJR
Check against Surgical Procedure List 'Post-op Death'	SJR
25% Sample, include all low risk deaths ⁴ 'Sample Deaths'	SJR

1. All inpatient deaths at STHK, transfers to other hospitals or settings not included

2. LeDeR – nationally prescribed process for reviewing LD deaths

3. Structured judgement review, currently STHK tool (see Appendix A)

4. Low risk deaths as defined by Dr Foster/HED grouping

5. Alert deaths, include any CQC alerts or 12-month internal monitoring alerts from the previous financial year.

2.4.7. Priority clinical standards for seven day hospital services

The Seven Day Hospital Services Programme aims to ensure that patients requiring emergency treatment receive high quality, consistent care every day of the week. The standards are intended to improve the care given to patients by enabling early and consistent senior decision making along with other urgent services. Ten clinical standards for seven day services were developed in 2013 through the Seven Day Services Forum, of which four were identified as national priorities for implementation by 2020 on the basis of their potential to positively affect patient outcomes. These are:

Standard 2 - Time to first consultant review

All emergency admissions must be seen and have a thorough clinical assessment by a suitable consultant as soon as possible, but at the latest **within 14 hours** from the time of admission to hospital.

Standard 5 – Access to diagnostic tests

Hospital inpatients must have scheduled **7 day access to specialist diagnostic services** including magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), echocardiography and endoscopy.

Standard 6 – Access to consultant-directed interventions

Hospital inpatients must have timely 24 hour access, seven days a week, to key consultant-directed interventions, either on-site or through formally agreed networked arrangements. These interventions include: interventional radiology, interventional endoscopy, emergency renal replacement therapy, urgent radiotherapy, stroke thrombolysis, percutaneous coronary intervention and cardiac pacing.

Standard 8 – Ongoing review by consultant twice daily if high dependency patients, daily for others

All patients with high dependency needs should be seen and reviewed by a consultant twice daily. Once a clear pathway of care has been established, patients should be reviewed by a consultant at least once every day, seven days a week, unless it has been determined that this would not affect the patient's care pathway. The Trust was audited regularly to indicate performance against the four priority standards and identify areas for improvement.

Latest performance against standards

CS2	CS5	CS6	CS8
64%	94%	100%	95%

In April 2018, 64% of patients involved in the audit were reviewed by a Consultant within 14 hours of admission, an improvement from 54% in March 2017.



The following actions have been put in place to further improve compliance:

Action	Rationale
Trust Lead for 7 Day Services to create and chair Trust 7DS Steering Group	Allows presentation and comparison of results between specialties, sharing of good practice and accountability for improvements across all disciplines
Streaming process to be embedded in ED to allow early identification and transfer of patients requiring speciality review	Early transfer of appropriate patients to assessment areas facilitates early discharge and/or Consultant review
Acute Medicine Consultant rota reviewed and changed to provide increased afternoon and evening cover	Medical patients make up largest volume of acute admissions. Increased Consultant presence will improve proportion of patients reviewed on day of admission
Paediatric Consultants working in ED in evenings	Increased evening presence of Paediatric Consultants in ED allows earlier Consultant review.
Frailty Consultant in-reach to ED	Frailty Consultant working in ED each day allows earlier intervention and Consultant review
Changes to 1st Consultant review process to encourage documentation of need for ongoing daily Consultant review	Not all patients require daily Consultant review; clear documentation of frequency of need for daily review will reduce avoidable fails against CS8.
Detailed gap analysis within each speciality to ascertain resource required to meet CS2	Some improvement in performance can be gained via change in practice but consistent performance >90% against CS2 may require increased Consultant presence at weekends or out of hours

The Trust will continue to monitor performance against the Seven Day Services Clinical Standards and implement the new Trust Board Assurance Process, which commenced in February 2019.

2.4.8. Information governance and toolkit attainment levels

Information Governance is the term used to describe the standards and processes for ensuring that organisations comply with the laws and regulations regarding handling and dealing with personal information. Within our organisation, we have clear policies and processes in place to ensure that information, including patient information, is handled in a confidential and secure manner.

The Trust looks to benchmark itself against the Data Security and Protection Toolkit (DSP), which replaced the Information Governance (IG) Toolkit. The DSP Toolkit provides a new mechanism for organisations to assess themselves against the National Data Guardian (NDG) 10 data security standards, through confirming assertions and providing supporting evidence.

The requirements for the DSP Toolkit differ from those within the previous IG Toolkit. An overview of the differences are provided below:

- The requirements of the DSP Toolkit are designed to encompass the 10 NDG Data Standards
- The requirements of the DSP Toolkit support key requirements under the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR), identified in the NHS GDPR Checklist. This will assist the Trust with its obligations in accordance with the GDPR
- The IG Toolkit assessed performance against three levels 1, 2 and 3
- Organisations were required to evidence compliance with (at least) level 2 for all elements of their assessment. The DSP Toolkit does not include levels, and instead requires compliance with assertions and (mandatory) evidence items

- The assertions and evidence items within the DSP Toolkit are designed to be concise and unambiguous. Documentary evidence is only requested where this adds value

St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust Information Governance Assessment Report overall submission position for 2018-19 was rated as meeting the required standards. This represents a consistent position based on last year's score and means that the Trust is compliant in all sections of the DSP Toolkit. This submission was audited by Mersey Internal Audit Agency and once again, the Trust has maintained its assurance level of "significant" which demonstrates the Trust's commitment to protecting the information it holds and uses.

The Trust continues to enhance its robust Information Governance Framework which is led by Craig Walker, Head of Information Governance, Quality Assurance and Data Protection Officer. Dr Alex Benson, Clinical Director for Burns and Plastic Surgery, is the Caldicott Guardian and is the dedicated designated individual within the Trust who is responsible for ensuring confidentiality of personal information. The Trust also has a Senior Information Risk Owner (SIRO), Christine Walters, Director of Informatics, who is responsible for reviewing and reporting on the management of information risk to the Trust Board. The SIRO is supported by a network of Information Asset Owners (IAOs), who ensure that any identified information risks are appropriately managed in line with the Trust's risk management policy.

The Data Protection Officer, SIRO and Caldicott Guardian are appropriately qualified, trained, registered and accredited.

The Trust has a duty to report any incident regarding breaches of the Data Protection Act to the Information Commissioner's Office (ICO) and for the financial year 2018-19 there were three such incidents. All of these incidents have been closed by the Information Commissioner's Office with no actions taken against the Trust. Relevant members of staff and members of the Information Governance Team have reviewed the three closed incidents and actions have been taken to minimise the likelihood of any reoccurrence.

2.4.9. Clinical coding error rate

St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust was not subject to the Payment by Results clinical coding audit during 2018-19 by the Audit Commission.

The Trust was subject to an audit of clinical coding, based on national standards undertaken by Clinical Classifications Service (CCS) approved clinical coding auditors in line with the Data Security & Protection Toolkit 2018-2019. The error rates reported in the latest published audit for that period of diagnoses and treatment coding (clinical coding) have all improved since last year and were:-

2018-19 data reported in January 2019				
Measure	Primary diagnosis incorrect	Secondary diagnosis incorrect	Primary procedure incorrect	Secondary procedure incorrect
Data Security & Protection Toolkit	5%	5.39%	2.88%	6.19%

2.4.10. Data quality

The Trust continues to be committed to ensuring accurate and up-to-date information is available to communicate effectively with GPs and others involved in delivering care to patients. Good quality information underpins effective delivery of patient care and supports better decision-making, which is essential for delivering improvements.

Data quality is fully embedded across the organisation, with robust governance arrangements in place to ensure the effective management of this process. Audit outcomes are monitored to ensure that the Trust continues to maintain performance in line with national standards. The data quality work plan is reviewed on an annual basis ensuring any new requirements are reflected in the plan.

The standard national data quality items that are routinely monitored are as follows:-

- Blank/invalid NHS number
- Unknown or dummy practice codes
- Blank or invalid registered GP practice
- Patient postcode

The Trust has implemented a new Patient Administration System (Medway) which has the functionality to allow for National Spine integration, giving users the ability to update patient details from national records using the NHS number as a unique identifier.

The Medway configuration restricts the options available to users. Validation of this work is on-going and will form part of the data quality work plan for 2019-20

2.4.10.1. NHS number and general medical practice code validity

St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust submitted records during 2018-19 to the Secondary Uses Service (SUS) for inclusion in the Hospital Episode Statistics (HES) which are included in the latest published data. The percentage of records in the published data which:

Included the patient's valid NHS number was:

Care Setting	STHK result	National Average
Admitted patient care	99.6%	99.4%
Outpatient care	99.9%	99.6%
Accident and Emergency care	99.1%	97.5%

Included the patient's valid General Medical Practice Code was:

Care Setting	STHK result	National Average
Admitted patient care	100%	99.9%
Outpatient care	100%	99.8%
Accident and Emergency care	100%	99.3%

(Source: SUS Data Quality Dashboard latest published report: April 2018 – November 2018)

In all cases, the Trust performed better than the national average, demonstrating the importance the Trust places on data quality.

The Trust will be taking the following actions to improve data quality:

- Data Quality Team will continue to monitor data quality throughout the Trust via the regular suite of reports
- Awareness raising sessions in order to focus on addressing any specific issues
- Providing data quality awareness sessions about the importance of good quality patient data and the impact of inaccurate data recording

2.4.11. Benchmarking information

The Department of Health specifies that the Quality Account includes information on a core set of outcome indicators, where the NHS is aiming to improve. All trusts are required to report against these indicators using a standard format. NHS Digital makes the following data available to NHS trusts. The Trust has more up-to-date information for some measures; however, only data with specified national benchmarks from the central data sources is reported, therefore, some information included in this report is from the previous year or earlier and the timeframes are included in the report. It is not always possible to provide the national average and best and worst performers for some indicators due to the way the data is provided.

2.4.11.1. Benchmarking Information

Please note the information below is based on the latest nationally reported data with specified benchmarks from the central data sources. *Any internal figures included are displayed in purple font.*

Indicator	Source	Reporting Period	STHK	National Performance			Comment
				Average	Lowest Trust	Highest Trust	
Summary Hospital-level Mortality Indicator (SHMI)	NHS Digital	Oct-17 to Sep-18	0.991	1	0.692	1.268	Next SHMI data (for Jan-18 to Dec-18) due to be published June 2019
SHMI	NHS Digital	Jul-17 to Jun-18	1.004	1	0.698	1.257	
SHMI	NHS Digital	Apr-17 to Mar-18	1.025	1	0.699	1.232	
SHMI Banding	NHS Digital	Oct-17 to Sep-18	2	2	3	1	
SHMI Banding	NHS Digital	Jul-17 to Jun-18	2	2	3	1	
SHMI Banding	NHS Digital	Apr-17 to Mar-18	2	2	3	1	
% of patient deaths having palliative care coded	NHS Digital	Oct-17 to Sep-18	37.40%	33.60%	14.30%	59.50%	
% of patient deaths having palliative care coded	NHS Digital	Jul-17 to Jun-18	37.50%	33.10%	13.40%	58.70%	
% of patient deaths having palliative care coded	NHS Digital	Apr-17 to Mar-18	37.30%	32.50%	12.60%	59.00%	
St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust considers that this data is as described for the following reasons: Information relating to mortality is monitored monthly and used to drive improvements. The mortality data is provided by an external source (Dr Foster). St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust has taken the following actions to improve the indicator and percentage, and so the quality of its services, by: Monthly monitoring of available measures of mortality. Learning from Deaths Policy implemented with continued focus on reviewing deaths to identify required actions for improvement and effective dissemination of lessons learned.							

Indicator	Source	Reporting Period	STHK	National Performance			Comment
				Average	Lowest Trust	Highest Trust	
EQ-5D adjusted health gain: Groin Hernia	NHS Digital	Apr-18 to Sep-18	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	Next PROMs data due to be published May-19 The mandatory varicose vein surgery and groin-hernia surgery national PROMs collections have now ended * data suppressed due to small numbers
EQ-5D adjusted health gain: Groin Hernia	NHS Digital	Apr-17 to Mar-18 (final)	0.076	0.089	0.029	0.137	
EQ-5D adjusted health gain: Hip Replacement Primary	NHS Digital	Apr-18 to Sep-18 (provisional)	*	0.489	0.407	0.564	
EQ-5D adjusted health gain: Hip Replacement Primary	NHS Digital	Apr-17 to Mar-18 (final)	0.411	0.468	0.376	0.566	
EQ-5D adjusted health gain: Knee Replacement Primary	NHS Digital	Apr-18 to Sep-18 (provisional)	*	0.345	0.227	0.426	
EQ-5D adjusted health gain: Knee Replacement Primary	NHS Digital	Apr-17 to Mar-18 (final)	0.28	0.338	0.234	0.417	
EQ-5D adjusted health gain: Varicose Vein	NHS Digital	Apr-18 to Sep-18	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	
EQ-5D adjusted health gain: Varicose Vein	NHS Digital	Apr-17 to Mar-18 (final)	*	0.096	0.035	0.134	
<p>St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust considers that this data is as described for the following reasons: The questionnaire used for PROMs is a validated tool and administered for the Trust by an independent organisation, Quality Health. St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust has taken the following actions to improve these outcome scores, and so the quality of its services, by: Delivering a number of actions to improve patient experiences following surgery. Monitoring the PROMs data at the Clinical Effectiveness Council.</p>							
(Indirectly age, sex, method of admission, diagnosis, procedure standardised) % of patients aged 16+ readmitted to the Trust within 28 days of discharge	NHS Digital	Apr-11 to Mar-12	12.73	11.45	0	17.15	2011-12 still latest data available. Date of next version to be confirmed. Lowest and best national performance based on acute providers
(Indirectly age, sex, method of admission, diagnosis, procedure standardised) % of patients aged 16+ readmitted to the Trust within 28 days of discharge	NHS Digital	Apr-10 to Mar-11	12.6	11.43	0	17.10	
(Indirectly age, sex, method of admission, diagnosis, procedure standardised) % of patients aged 0-15 readmitted to the Trust within 28 days of discharge	NHS Digital	Apr-11 to Mar-12	11.39	10.01	0	14.94	
(Indirectly age, sex, method of admission, diagnosis, procedure standardised) % of patients aged 0-15 readmitted to the Trust within 28 days of discharge	NHS Digital	Apr-10 to Mar-11	10.66	10.01	0	14.11	

Indicator	Source	Reporting Period	STHK	National Performance			Comment
				Average	Lowest Trust	Highest Trust	
<p>St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust considers that this data is as described for the following reasons: The data is consistent with Dr Foster’s standardised ratios for re-admissions. The data is monitored monthly by the Trust Board. St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust has taken the following actions to improve these scores, and so the quality of its services, by: Working to improve discharge information as a patient experience priority. Reviewing and improving the effectiveness of discharge planning.</p>							
Patient experience measured by scoring the results of a selection of questions from the national inpatient survey focussing on the responsiveness to personal needs.	NHS Digital	2017-18	70.5	68.6	60.5	85	Next version due Aug-19
Patient experience measured by scoring the results of a selection of questions from the national inpatient survey focussing on the responsiveness to personal needs.	NHS Digital	2016-17	68.7	68.1	60	85.2	
<p>St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust considers that this data is as described for the following reasons: The Trust’s vision and drive to provide 5-star patient care ensures that patients are at the centre of all the Trust does. The Trust was rated outstanding overall for caring by the CQC following their inspection in 2018. The survey is conducted by an independent and approved survey provider (Quality Health), with scores taken from the CQC website. St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust has taken the following actions to improve this data, and so the quality of its services, by: Promoting a culture of patient-centred care. Responding to patient feedback received through national and local surveys, Friends and Family Test results, complaints and Patient Advice and Liaison Service (PALS). Working closely with Healthwatch colleagues to address priorities identified by patients, including improving discharge planning.</p>							
Q21d. If a friend or relative needed treatment, I would be happy with the standard of care provided by this Trust.	NHS staff surveys	2018	86.80%	70.00%	41.10%	86.80%	All data is for Acute Providers only
Q21d. If a friend or relative needed treatment, I would be happy with the standard of care provided by this Trust.	NHS staff surveys	2017	83.40%	69.80%	46.80%	85.70%	
% experiencing harassment, bullying or abuse from staff in last 12 months	NHS staff surveys	2018	11.70%	20.00%	28.40%	11.70%	Low scores are better performing trusts
% experiencing harassment, bullying or abuse from staff in last 12 months	NHS staff surveys	2017	13.90%	19.00%	27.40%	13.60%	
% believing the organisation provides equal opportunities for career progression/ promotion	NHS staff surveys	2018	94.30%	83.90%	69.20%	94.30%	
% believing the organisation provides equal opportunities for career progression/ promotion	NHS staff surveys	2017	93.50%	84.50%	68.60%	94.20%	

Indicator	Source	Reporting Period	STHK	National Performance			Comment
				Average	Lowest Trust	Highest Trust	
St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust considers that this data is as described for the following reasons; The Trust provides a positive working environment for staff with a proactive Health, Work and Wellbeing Service. An independent provider, Quality Health, provides the data. St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust has taken the following actions to improve these percentages, and so the quality of its services, by: Embedding a positive culture with clear visible leadership, clarity of vision and actively promoting behavioural standards for all staff. Engagement of staff at all levels in the development of the vision and values of the Trust. Honest and open culture, with staff supported to raise concerns via Speak Out Safely, Freedom to Speak Up champions and anonymous Speak in Confidence website.							
Friends & Family Test - A&E - Response Rate	NHS England	Mar-19	20.50%	12.30%	0.00%	37.10%	National average includes Independent Sector Providers. Response rate Some organisations' data may include response rates of greater than 100%. This occurs when responses relating to discharges in one month are received by organisations too late for that month's submission and are submitted as part of the return in the following month. Patients/Carers/Family members may also choose to submit responses at multiple points during a period of care/treatment resulting in multiple submissions to the same month.
Friends & Family Test - A&E - Response Rate	NHS England	Feb-19	18.90%	12.20%	0.00%	35.60%	
Friends & Family Test - A&E - Response Rate	NHS England	Jan-19	18.90%	11.90%	0.00%	31.10%	
Friends & Family Test - A&E - Response Rate	NHS England	Dec-18	20.00%	11.40%	0.00%	32.10%	
Friends & Family Test - A&E - % recommended	NHS England	Mar-19	85.50%	85.90%	55.60%	100.00%	
Friends & Family Test - A&E - % recommended	NHS England	Feb-19	86.20%	85.30%	57.00%	100.00%	
Friends & Family Test - A&E - % recommended	NHS England	Jan-19	85.50%	86.00%	59.70%	100.00%	
Friends & Family Test - A&E - % recommended	NHS England	Dec-18	85.80%	86.50%	42.90%	100.00%	
Friends & Family Test - Inpatients - Response Rate	NHS England	Mar-19	33.10%	24.60%	0.90%	100.00%	
Friends & Family Test - Inpatients - Response Rate	NHS England	Feb-19	33.10%	24.60%	1.90%	100.00%	
Friends & Family Test - Inpatients - Response Rate	NHS England	Jan-19	31.00%	24.00%	1.80%	100.00%	
Friends & Family Test - Inpatients - Response Rate	NHS England	Dec-18	33.00%	22.20%	2.10%	107.70%	
Friends & Family Test - Inpatients - % recommended	NHS England	Mar-19	95.60%	95.70%	76.80%	100.00%	
Friends & Family Test - Inpatients - % recommended	NHS England	Feb-19	95.00%	95.70%	76.30%	100.00%	
Friends & Family Test - Inpatients - % recommended	NHS England	Jan-19	92.90%	95.60%	75.70%	100.00%	
Friends & Family Test - Inpatients - % recommended	NHS England	Dec-18	93.50%	95.60%	80.80%	100.00%	

Indicator	Source	Reporting Period	STHK	National Performance			Comment
				Average	Lowest Trust	Highest Trust	
<p>St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust considers that this data is as described for the following reasons: The Trust actively promotes the Friends and Family Test across all areas. The data is submitted monthly to NHS England. St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust has taken the following actions to improve these percentages, and so the quality of its services, by: Continuing to promote Friends and Family Test (FFT) using a variety of methods, including face-to-face and technology. Actively working with ward staff and the Trust's Patient Experience and Dignity Champions to improve levels of engagement with the system, to ensure the latest results are shared at local level.</p>							
% of patients admitted to hospital who were risk assessed for VTE	NHS England	Quarter 3 2018-19	96.40%	95.60%	54.86%	100.00%	National Data for Q4 2018-19 will be published in June 2019. All data is for Acute Providers only
% of patients admitted to hospital who were risk assessed for VTE	NHS England	Quarter 2 2018-19	96.45%	95.44%	68.67%	100.00%	
% of patients admitted to hospital who were risk assessed for VTE	NHS England	Quarter 1 2018-19	95.17%	95.62%	75.84%	100.00%	
<p>St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust considers that this data is as described for the following reasons: Continued focus on achieving the target of 95% of patients having a VTE risk assessment within 24 hours of admission to ensure that they receive the most appropriate treatment, having achieved 95.92% for 2018-19. Root cause analysis (RCA) undertaken on VTEs recorded on Datix to ensure best practice is followed. During 2018-19, 26 patients developed a hospital acquired thrombosis, of which 19 RCAs have been completed to date and 100% were found to have received appropriate care. Data on VTE risk assessments are submitted to NHS England each month. St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust is taking the following actions to improve this percentage, and so the quality of its services, by: Maintaining focus on, and closely monitoring, the rate of risk assessments undertaken by the Quality Committee. Undertaking audits on the administration of appropriate medications to prevent blood clots. Completing RCA investigations on all patients who develop a hospital acquired venous thrombosis to ensure that best practice has been followed. Sharing any learning from these reviews and providing ongoing training for clinical staff.</p>							
C Difficile rates per 100,000 bed-days for specimens taken from patients aged 2 years and over (Trust apportioned cases)	Internal	April-18 to Mar-19	8.59				Apr-17 to Mar-18 data was published in July 2018 Data for Apr-18 to Mar-19 due to be published in July 2019
C Difficile rates per 100,000 bed-days for specimens taken from patients aged 2 years and over (Trust apportioned cases)	GOV.UK	Apr-17 to Mar-18	11.4	13.7	0	91	
C Difficile rates per 100,000 bed-days for specimens taken from patients aged 2 years and over (Trust apportioned cases)	GOV.UK	Apr-16 to Mar-17	11.4	13.2	0	82.7	
<p>St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust considers that this data is as described for the following reasons: Infection prevention and control remains a priority for the Trust. All new cases of C. difficile infection are identified by the laboratory and reported to the Infection Prevention Team, who co-ordinate mandatory reporting to Health Protection England. The Trust is maintaining compliance with the national guidance on testing stool specimens in patients with diarrhoea. All cases are thoroughly investigated using RCA, which is reported back to a multidisciplinary panel chaired by an Executive Director to ensure appropriate care was provided and lessons learned are disseminated across the Trust.</p>							

Indicator	Source	Reporting Period	STHK	National Performance			Comment
				Average	Lowest Trust	Highest Trust	
St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust has taken the following actions to improve this rate, and so the quality of its services, by: Focussing on ensuring staff compliance with mandatory training for infection prevention and control. Actively promoting the use of hand washing and hand gels to those visiting the hospital. Providing a proactive and responsive infection prevention service to increase levels of compliance. Ensuring comprehensive guidance is in place on antibiotic prescribing.							
Incidents per 1,000 bed days	Internal	Oct-18 to Dec-18	39.41	/	/	/	"Next data to be published in June 2019 Based on acute (non-specialist) trusts with complete data (6 months data)"
Incidents per 1,000 bed days	NHS Improvement	Apr-18 to Sep-18	34.95	44.10	22.08	107.37	
Incidents per 1,000 bed days	NHS Improvement	Oct-17 to Mar-18	37.32	42.25	24.96	124.00	
Incidents per 1,000 bed days	NHS Improvement	Apr-17 to Sep-17	40.48	42.10	23.47	111.69	
Number of incidents	Internal	Oct-18 to Dec-18	2438	/	/	/	
Number of incidents	NHS Improvement	Apr-18 to Sep-18	4228	5714	1285	23692	
Number of incidents	NHS Improvement	Oct-17 to Mar-18	4643	5537	1513	19897	
Number of incidents	nrls.npsa.co.uk	Apr-17 to Sep-17	4927	5287	1992	15228	
Incidents resulting in severe harm or death per 1,000 bed days	Internal	Oct-18 to Dec-18	0.16	/	/	/	
Incidents resulting in severe harm or death per 1,000 bed days	NHS Improvement	Apr-18 to Sep-18	0.09	0.15	0.00	0.54	
Incidents resulting in severe harm or death per 1,000 bed days	NHS Improvement	Oct-17 to Mar-18	0.10	0.15	0.00	0.55	
Incidents resulting in severe harm or death per 1,000 bed days	nrls.npsa.co.uk	Apr-17 to Sep-17	0.12	0.15	0.00	0.64	
Number of incidents resulting in severe harm or death	Internal	Oct-18 to Dec-18	10	/	/	/	
Number of incidents resulting in severe harm or death	NHS Improvement	Apr-18 to Sep-18	11	19	0	87	
Number of incidents resulting in severe harm or death	NHS Improvement	Oct-17 to Mar-18	13	19	0	99	
Number of incidents resulting in severe harm or death	nrls.npsa.co.uk	Apr-17 to Sep-17	15	19	0	121	
Percentage of patient safety incidents that resulted in severe harm or death	Internal	Oct-18 to Dec-18	0.40%	/	/	/	

Indicator	Source	Reporting Period	STHK	National Performance			Comment
				Average	Lowest Trust	Highest Trust	
Percentage of patient safety incidents that resulted in severe harm or death	NHS Improvement	Apr-18 to Sep-18	0.30%	0.30%	0.00%	1.20%	
Percentage of patient safety incidents that resulted in severe harm or death	NHS Improvement	Oct-17 to Mar-18	0.30%	0.30%	0.00%	1.50%	
Percentage of patient safety incidents that resulted in severe harm or death	nrls.npsa.co.uk	Apr-17 to Sep-17	0.30%	0.40%	0.00%	2.00%	
<p>St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust considers that this data is as described for the following reasons: The Trust actively promotes a culture of open and honest reporting within a culture of fair blame. The data has been validated against National Reporting and Learning System (NRLS) and HSCIC figures. The latest data to be published is up to September 2018. The Trust's overall percentage of incidents that resulted in severe harm or death was 0.4%. St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust has taken the following actions to improve this number and rate, and so the quality of its services, by: Previously committed to the Sign up to Safety campaign to reduce avoidable harm by 50% by 2018. Undertaking comprehensive investigations of incidents resulting in moderate or severe harm. Delivering simulation training to enhance team working in clinical areas. Providing staff training in incident reporting and risk management. Monitoring key performance indicators at the Patient Safety Council. Continuing to promote an open and honest reporting culture to ensure incidents are consistently reported.</p>							
<p>Due to reasons of confidentiality, NHS digital has suppressed figures for those areas highlighted with an '*' (an asterisk). This is because the underlying data has small numbers (between 1 and 5)</p>							

2.4.12. Performance against national targets and regulatory requirements

The Trust aims to meet all national targets. Performance against the key indicators for 2018-19 is shown in the table below:

Performance Indicator	2017-18 Performance	2018-19 Target	2018-19 Performance	Latest data
Cancelled operations (% of patients treated within 28 days following cancellation)	Not Achieved	100.0%	99.5%	Apr-18 to Mar-19
Referral to treatment targets (% within 18 weeks and 95th percentile targets) – Incomplete pathways	Achieved	92%	92.4%	Apr-18 to Mar-19
Cancer: 31-day wait from diagnosis to first treatment	Achieved	96%	98.1%	Apr-18 to Mar-19
Cancer: 31-day wait for second or subsequent treatment:				
- surgery	Achieved	94%	96.8%	Apr-18 to Mar-19
- anti-cancer drug treatments	Achieved	98%	100.0%	Apr-18 to Mar-19
Cancer: 62-day wait for first treatment:				
- from urgent GP referral	Achieved	85%	88.3%	Apr-18 to Mar-19
- from consultant upgrade	Achieved	85%	88.3%	Apr-18 to Mar-19
- from urgent screening referral	Achieved	90%	95.4%	Apr-18 to Mar-19
Cancer: 2 week wait from referral to date first seen:				
- urgent GP suspected cancer referrals	Achieved	93%	92.2%	Apr-18 to Mar-19
- symptomatic breast patients	Achieved	93%	91.6%	Apr-18 to Mar-19
Emergency Department waiting times within 4 hours - Type 1 only	Not achieved	95%	74.3%	Apr-18 to Mar-19
Percentage of patients admitted with stroke spending at least 90% of their stay on a stroke unit	Achieved	83%	85.7%	Apr-18 to Mar-19
Clostridium Difficile	Achieved	40	25* 25 positive samples, of which 12 were successfully appealed with no lapses in care	Apr-18 to Mar-19
MRSA bacteraemia	Not achieved	0	1 contaminant	Apr-18 to Mar-19
Maximum 6-week wait for diagnostic procedures: % of Diagnostic Waits who waited <6 weeks	Achieved	99%	99.9%	Dec-18 to Mar-19

Section 3

This section of the Quality Account reviews the Trust's performance for quality and quality improvement indicators not covered in the report so far. It includes an update on progress in delivering the Trust's own strategies.

3.1. Summary of how we did in achieving our strategies

3.1.1. Clinical and Quality Strategy 2016-20

The Trust's vision to provide 5 star patient care encapsulates the Trust's approach to quality in striving to achieve the best possible care for patients. The Trust performs very strongly against national, regional and local targets and, therefore, when the Clinical and Quality Strategy was refreshed in 2016, the Trust Board chose to narrow its focus to ten difficult and challenging goals. Details of plans to address these targets are discussed at Quality Committee or Finance and Performance Committee.

For 2019, there is a new Clinical Strategy, however, there is a summary of progress in delivering the previous strategy below:

- 1.** 4-hour performance is the only major national standard that the Trust has consistently failed to achieve. An improvement trajectory for 2019-20 has been agreed with NHS Improvement and intensive work is underway to achieve this
- 2.** Weekend mortality has fallen significantly over the past couple of years
- 3.** Overall 62-day cancer performance is consistently strong. Several pathways, typically involving other hospitals and teams are less consistent and are subject to intensive improvement work, scrutinised by the Quality Committee
- 4.** VTE assessment has been subject to intensive support and is now consistently above the 95% standard. The implementation of an electronic solution will add further resilience in due course
- 5.** Electronic discharge targets were not possible with the legacy patient administration system, but the new system, Medway, coupled with an interim electronic solution will improve performance pending the introduction of a full electronic patient record in due course. In the interim, a system of early automated notifications provide very basic information about patient admissions within required timeframes
- 6.** Falls performance has continued to improve. The Quality Committee continues to scrutinise this target
- 7.** Timeliness of complaints performance has consistently improved
- 8.** Investment in the Sepsis Team has resulted in very strong overall performance in ED and on the wards. Intensive work is ongoing to improve the timely detection and treatment of all patients, especially young children. As part of learning from a serious incident, new and improved patient-validated discharge information for children who initially presented to ED with possible sepsis is being adopted (from Newcastle)
- 9.** Time to theatre for fractured neck of femur patients had improved on the latest available national benchmark of fragility fracture management
- 10.** Critical care mortality continues to improve and is now better than England average

3.1.2. Nursing and Midwifery Strategy 2014-18

The Strategy's aim was to embed the Chief Nursing Officer's '6Cs' through strong clinical leadership. Progress has been made in all areas and a new strategy is being drawn up to build on our current successes.

Elements of the Nursing & Midwifery Strategy (2014-2018) that were delivered this year include:

- Regular reviews of nursing establishments to ensure safe effective care
- Strengthening safe discharges by reviewing ward processes
- Embracing electronic prescribing and medicines administration (EPMA) systems to support the reduction in medication errors
- First Cancer Clinical Nurse Specialist (CNS) annual education day held, "Curious about cancer" (funded by Macmillan) with over 80 delegates from secondary and primary care attending
- Diabetes team 'Cloud' service to improve collaborative working between primary and secondary care, which includes a telephone line for specialist advice for professionals, patients and carers for diabetes advice and support. This runs seven days 8am – 10pm. A new community diabetes specialist nurse has been employed to drive this collaborative working, providing support to practice nurses, care homes, district nurses and other community services and to improve achievement of the NICE recommended treatment targets for cholesterol, blood pressure and blood sugar monitoring



Our senior Nursing, Midwifery and Allied Health Professionals' leadership team is focussed on supporting teams to deliver the best possible care for patients, recognising that leading teams with compassion directly affects the outcomes and experience of our patients.

In preparing the new strategy, we have used the National Nursing, Midwifery and Care Staff Framework, Leading Change, Adding Value and the Allied Health Professionals Into Action Framework to guide our plans along with staff feedback to create a plan for the next 3 years.

The strategy includes a focus on communities working together to prevent unnecessary ill-health through an improved focus on health and wellbeing and a continuous drive to deliver person-centred care.

3.1.3. Human Resources and Workforce Strategy 2014-19

The Human Resources (HR) and Workforce Strategy has been in existence since 2014 and continues to positively contribute to the provision of 5-star patient care throughout the Trust, specifically in developing organisational culture and supporting our workforce. There are a number of key HR Directorate strategies that underpin the Human Resources & Workforce Strategy, including Health, Work & Well-being, Recruitment & Retention, Learning & Development, Talent Management and the Education Strategy.

In September 2016, the Trust became the host for the Merseyside Career Engagement Hub. This involves working collaboratively with local schools, colleges and Job Centre Plus to improve access to structured work placements for a range of local people including, students, the long term unemployed and disadvantaged people from the

local community to provide them with the skills and experience to gain employment in the NHS.

The Trust has also signed up to the 'Step into Health' programme, which supports military veterans to gain employment in the NHS. The Trust officially pledged to champion the Step into Health campaign and to value the contribution made by military service leavers and their families. The Trust continues to work closely with the Armed Forces Community to provide career and development opportunities and achieved the bronze Armed Forces Covenant – Employer Recognition Scheme award in 2017-18 and silver in 2018-19.

The Trust launched its Workforce Equality, Diversity & Inclusion Strategy and 3 year programme plan in July 2018. The strategy and programme (action) plan outlines the Trust's approach to workforce equality, diversity and inclusion across the next 3 years, 2018–21.



3.1.4. Equality, Diversity and Inclusion Strategy

The Trust is committed to ensuring that its staff and service users enjoy the benefits of a healthcare organisation that respects and upholds individuals' rights and freedom. Equality and human rights are at the core of our beliefs and the Trust strives to ensure that people with protected characteristics as defined by the Equality Act 2010 are not disadvantaged when accessing services and that all our patients receive the same quality services.

Our Diversity and Inclusion Steering Group meets bimonthly to ensure all external standards are fully complied with, including those statutory requirements conferred on the Trust by the Equality Act 2010. The membership of the steering group is drawn from a wide range of staff from all disciplines, clinical, non-clinical, trade union representatives, Healthwatch representatives and independent service users.

In addition to the steering group, the Trust also holds monthly Workforce Equality, Diversity and Inclusion meetings to work through the workforce plan that was developed in summer 2018. This robust work plan addresses all elements of equality, diversity and inclusion relating to the staff working in the Trust, and has initially helped to improve workforce equality monitoring by encouraging staff to update their personal details, in particular information around their sexual orientation and disability status.

During 2018-19, the Trust has developed new and existing policies. These include a new Workforce Transgender Policy and an extended use of Interpreting Services Policy to include the Accessible Information Standard. This will ensure that we are identifying patients' additional

communication needs at the earliest opportunity, placing an alert in the patient record to show that a patient has additional needs and a description of what those needs may be.

The Trust's new Patient Access System (PAS), Medway, went live in April 2018. This system is now fully compliant with the requirements of the Accessible Information Standard and staff are able to record a patient's additional communication needs in detail and place an alert on the patient record, which is visible to all staff when they enter the patient record.

All functions provided by the Trust are subject to an equality analysis to ensure that the Trust is neither directly nor indirectly discriminating against members of one or more protected groups. The policy for carrying out an equality analysis provides guidance on the need to carry out a robust analysis on the following:

- Development of Trust policies and procedures
- Service redesign or development
- Strategic or business planning
- Organisational changes affecting patients, employees or both
- Cost improvement programmes
- Commissioning or decommissioning of services

These analyses enable the Trust to meet both the general and specific equality duties by carrying out a robust, systematic assessment of all the Trust's activities in order to eliminate actual or potential discrimination at the earliest stage, before there is an adverse impact on patients, employees or visitors to the Trust. These assessments also provide an opportunity to identify any positive impacts on people from all of protected groups, carers and hard to reach groups.

A new toolkit has been developed to guide and support staff when carrying out these assessments and includes a section to evidence where consultation (following the Gunning Principles) has taken place and a section to provide assurance that the Public Sector Equality Duty (PSED s149) has been met. This toolkit is especially useful when assessing proposed changes to services or cost improvement programmes.

The Trust held its EDS2 panel/assessment in February 2019. The aim of this panel was to help develop new equality objectives plus associated action plans based on the barriers and health inequalities that some of our local communities currently face. The equality objectives 2019-23 are:

- To improve access and outcomes for patients and communities who experience disadvantage
- To improve our equality performance by collaboration and partnership working
- To engage and consult with all our local communities, and to raise awareness of health inequalities both within our workforce and in our local communities
- To take steps to ensure that our workforce is broadly representative of the communities we serve, at all levels
- Improve the wellbeing of staff employed in the Trust
- Improve the experiences of Black and Minority Ethnic staff employed in the Trust

The Trust was assessed by Navajo inspectors in February 2019 and were successfully reaccredited with the Navajo Chartermark. The Navajo group meets monthly and during the past 12 months has made significant progress towards retaining this Chartermark, some of the work done by this group includes:

- Setting up a lesbian, gay, bisexual and transgender + (LGBT+) staff network, which is led by staff members

- Development of a Workforce Transgender Policy
- Development of a Caring for Transgender Patients Policy
- Hosting the Trust's first NHS Diversity and Inclusion Conference, where staff received information and training around cultural competency, learning disabilities and the Mental Capacity Act
- Flying the Rainbow Flag to celebrate International Day against Homophobia and Transphobia on all sites where the Trust provides services

Specialist speakers have been invited to this group to train members of the group including:

- Silver Rainbows: part of Cheshire and North Wales Body Positive, who spoke to the group about the issues/barriers faced by older LGBT people when accessing healthcare services
- Transgender speaker (trans man) spoke to the group about his journey through the transition process both from a workforce perspective and also his medical journey and the barriers he encountered along the way
- LGBT Cancer Programme – the co-ordinators of this programme spoke to the group about how often LGBT cancer patients have poorer outcomes than others, partly due to lifestyle choices, but also due to their reluctance to engage with services early on in their illness

The Trust's Patient Inclusion and Experience Lead is part of a steering group working on the Merseyside and Cheshire LGBT Cancer Project. This project is a collaboration between Sahir House in Liverpool and Macmillan to develop resources and training for staff dealing with LGBT cancer patients, with the aim of improving outcomes.

The Trust became a Hate Crime Reporting Centre in February 2019, working in collaboration with Merseyside Police.



This is a unique scheme that allows patients, staff and members of our local community to report a hate crime/incident through links on the internet and intranet sites directly to Merseyside Police Hate Crime Co-ordinator. This is a confidential reporting scheme and once a person has raised a concern via this platform the Hate Crime Co-ordinator will contact them directly and arrange to meet them to discuss how best to resolve their concerns. In addition to this scheme, the Hate Crime Co-ordinator has hosted drop in sessions at Whiston Hospital for over 2 years and in 2018 these sessions were extended to allow additional monthly sessions at St Helens Hospital.

In collaboration with Merseyside CCG's Equality and Inclusion Service and several other local trusts, and in consultation with St Helens Deafness Resource Centre, we have led on the development of a set of quality standards for the providers of interpreting and translation services.

These standards have been developed to ensure that people who have limited ability to communicate in English are supported to be able to access and receive high quality healthcare. The quality standards aim to ensure a consistent approach to commissioning interpreting and translation services across the Merseyside healthcare system, to remove unwarranted variation in quality and to ensure that quality drives future procurement and commissioning decisions.

Following the d/Deaf consultation event hosted by Liverpool CCG early in 2019 the Trust developed an action plan to ensure improvements are made in the service currently provide to d/Deaf patients. The Trust is working closely with representatives from St Helens Deafness Resource Centre and Knowsley Healthwatch in order to progress the action plan, which has been incorporated into the overarching Accessible Information action plan.

3.1.5. Freedom to speak up

The Trust is committed to providing and developing a culture where all staff feel empowered to speak up or raise concerns. The Trust values include being open and honest and listening and learning. There are a number of supportive facilities for staff to raise concerns, including:

- **Freedom to speak up**

The Trust has appointed four Freedom to Speak up Guardians, who provide support to staff across the organisation. The guardians are representative of various staff groups and backgrounds. They provide an alternative way for staff to discuss and raise concerns and act as an independent and impartial source of advice to staff at any stage of raising a concern.

The work of the guardians has a direct impact on continuously improving safety and quality for patients, carers and families, as well as enhancing the experience of staff, by acting on the concerns raised. The Guardians provide feedback to the staff that have raised a concern, in a manner that is supportive, whilst ensuring that there are no repercussions for the person raising a concern.

The Trust works in partnership with the National Guardian's Office and North West Regional Network of Freedom to Speak up Guardians to enhance staff experience with raising concerns.

- **Speak in confidence system**

The Trust has in place an anonymous reporting system, Speak in Confidence, which enables all staff irrespective of position to feel confident that they can raise concerns without disclosing their identity. The system uses a browser-based interface to ensure anonymity so that the concern raiser remains anonymous at all times. However, the manager receiving the concern is able to provide a response to the concern, to

request further information and/or to provide assurances of actions taken to mitigate the risks associated with the concern raised via the online system.

- **Raising concerns hotline**

The Trust also has a telephone hotline, which provides access to report any concerns, which are reviewed and actioned by the Assistant Medical Director.

- **Health, Work and Wellbeing hotline**

Staff members have access to a dedicated helpline, to provide advice and support regarding health and wellbeing aspects relating to work or issues impacting the individual. Individualised support can be offered dependent on the needs and circumstances. Concerns about workplace can be raised through the hotline.

- **Hate crime reporting**

A hate crime is when someone commits a crime against a person because of their disability, gender identity, race, sexual orientation, religion, or any other perceived difference. The Trust, in partnership with the Merseyside Police, launched the first ever Hate Crime Reporting Scheme based at an NHS Trust, as noted in section 3.1.4 above. This is a confidential on-line reporting service that enables anyone from across our organisation and local communities to report, in complete confidence, any incidents or concerns around hate crime to Merseyside Police.

- **Policies and procedures**

There are a number of Trust policies and procedures that facilitate the raising of staff concerns as follows; Grievance Policy and Procedure, Respect and Dignity at Work Policy, Being Open Policy. Staff are also encouraged to informally raise any concerns to their manager, nominated HR lead or their staff side representative, as well as considering the routes listed above.

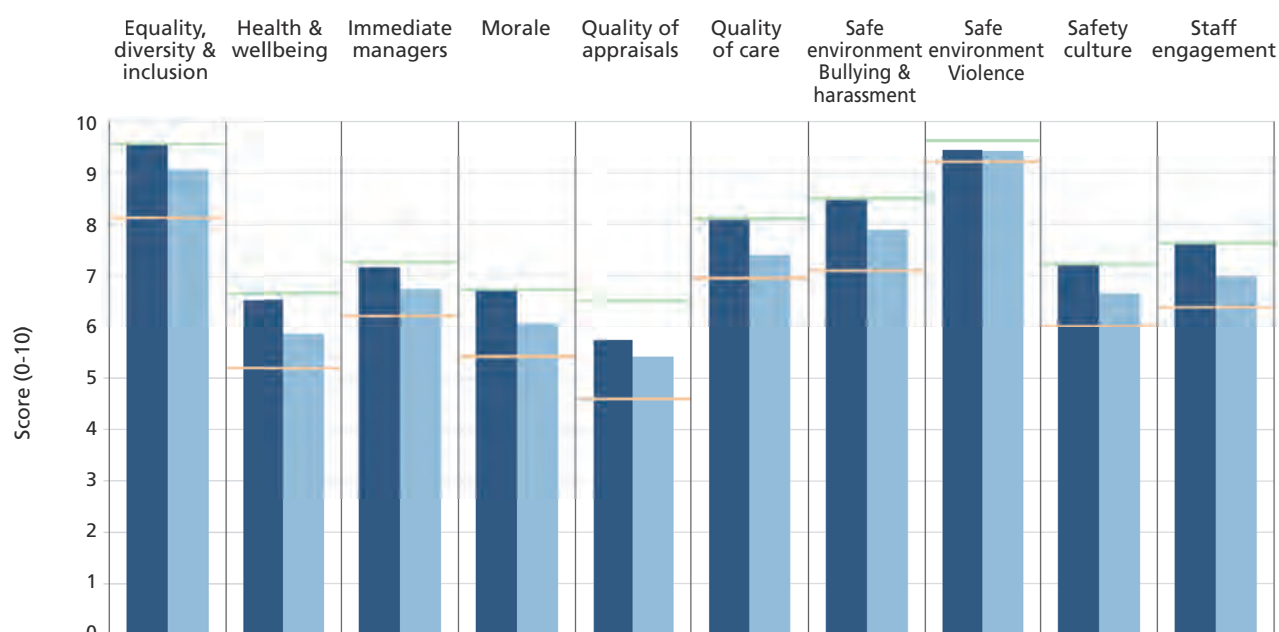
3.1.6. Staff survey key questions

The national staff survey provides a key measure of the experiences of the Trust's staff, with the findings used to reinforce good practice and to identify any areas for improvement. The Trust's response rate for the 2018 survey was 51%, which is the highest score for acute trusts in the North West.

A new reporting scheme was introduced, as the 32 key findings previously reported on have been replaced by 10 themes. The themes are positively scored on a 0 to 10 point scale, a higher score indicating a better result.

Overall, the Trust has the highest national score for 6 themes out of 10, and only 0.1 below the best national score for another 2 themes, as indicated below:

Summary of Trust scores for each of the staff survey 2018 themes



Best	9.6	6.7	7.3	6.7	6.5	8.1	8.5	9.6	7.2	7.6
STHK	9.6	6.5	7.2	6.7	5.7	8.1	8.5	9.5	7.2	7.6
Average	9.1	5.9	6.7	6.1	5.4	7.4	7.9	9.4	6.6	7.0
Worst	8.1	5.2	6.2	5.4	4.6	7.0	7.1	9.2	6.0	6.4

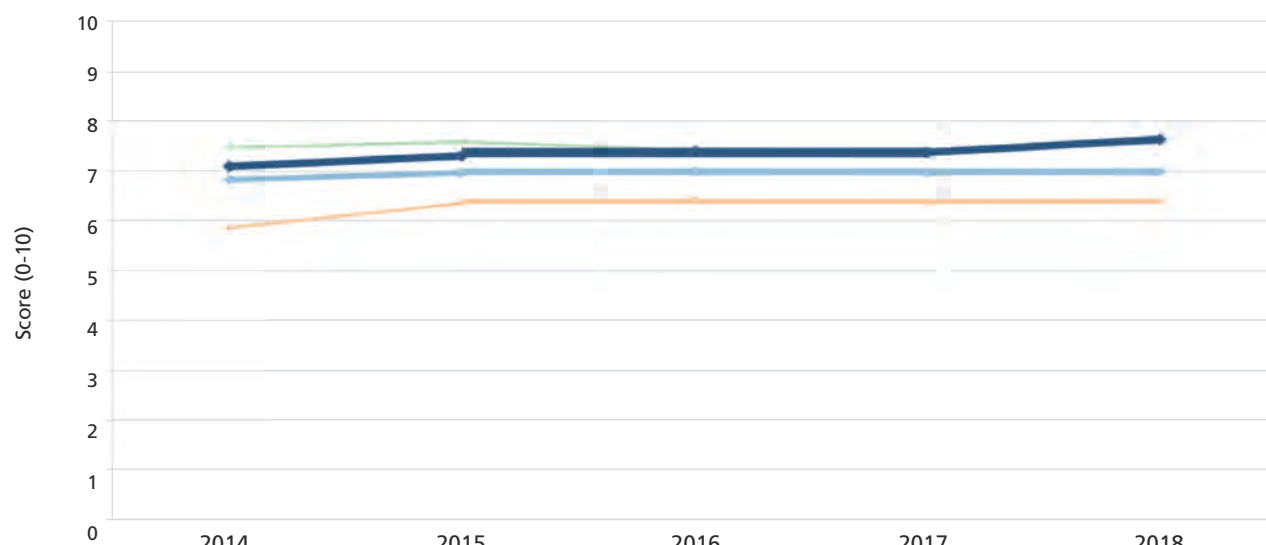
The Trust has been rated as the best place to work in the NHS for the second consecutive year. STHK is also the most recommended acute trust in England to receive care or treatment.

In addition, 88.3% of staff agreed that care of patients/service users is the organisation's top priority, an increase from 83.7% last year and well above the national average of 76%.

The below graphics for staff engagement indicate that our Trust has the best score nationally for the third consecutive year, with a significant improvement since 2014.

Overall Staff Engagement is measured as an average across three themes: advocacy, motivation and involvement. Staff engagement scores fall between 0 and 10, where the higher the score, the more engaged the staff.

Comparison of Trust's score for overall staff engagement in annual staff surveys 2014-2018



	2014	2015	2016	2017	2018
Best	7.5	7.6	7.4	7.4	7.6
STHK	7.1	7.3	7.4	7.4	7.6
Average	6.8	7.0	7.0	7.0	7.0
Worst	5.9	6.4	6.5	6.4	6.4

The most notable contributory responses to this overall indicator of staff engagement are the 'Staff Friends and Family Test questions', staff members' willingness to recommend the Trust as a place to work or receive treatment" (81% and 87.3% respectively), for which the Trust returned the best scores nationally, as in 2017.

Whilst the overwhelming majority of responses are positive, three areas were identified for improvement: quality of appraisals, work related musculoskeletal problems and violence on staff by patients and their relatives.

These areas have the potential to impact on staff morale, therefore, it is imperative that the Trust takes steps to address these. A deep dive has identified the specific areas and staff groups where focussed action will be taken and an action plan has been developed to support this work.

3.1.7. Health, Work and Wellbeing

The Trust has a Health, Work and Wellbeing Strategy 2016-2021 in place, which is delivered by the Health, Work and Wellbeing Service. The service is nurse-led and includes many different specialists who work together collaboratively. The team includes occupational health physicians, occupational health advisors, an occupational psychologist, counsellors and a physiotherapy service which is fully supported by an administrative team.

The main aim of the service is to ensure that employees are both physically and mentally healthy, as a healthy motivated workforce is integral to achieving better care for patients. Research shows that supporting the wellbeing of the workforce is paramount to achieving higher levels of performance (Boorman Review, 2009).

The service has recently been reaccredited to ensure that the service continues to meet the national minimum standard when delivering a Safe Effective Quality Occupational Health Services (SEQOHS). The assessment looks at the following aspects of Occupational Health; business probity, information governance, people, facilities and equipment, relationships with purchasers and workers.

Throughout 2018-2019 there have been a number of activities to encourage staff to improve their wellbeing. During the month of June 2018, a summer health education and promotion campaign was undertaken by the Health, Work and Wellbeing Team supported by external speakers (subject matter experts).

The campaign was provided at three of the Trust's main locations and included:

- Positive mental health support – which included mindfulness and meditation
- Drug and alcohol awareness
- Skin care
- Sun safety
- Sexual health
- Healthy lifestyle
- Promoting physical activity

The annual Health, Work and Wellbeing Open Day was held in September 2018, which attracted over 600 staff from all over the Trust. The session provided information on a range of health and wellbeing topics, for example, mental health support (mindfulness, employee assistance programme, counselling), increasing physical activity and healthy eating.

The successful flu vaccination programme was launched at the Open Day. In total 95.4% of frontline healthcare workers were vaccinated, which far exceeds the 75% national CQuIN target. The Trust has been rated as top performing Trust nationally.

In February 2019, the Trust introduced wellbeing champions and 40 staff have signed up as champions and will be providing their peers with regular health and wellbeing updates.

3.1.8. Clinical education and training

The focus on providing excellent clinical education opportunities has continued in 2018-19. This has included extending the simulation programme, including procuring paediatric simulators to enhance the training of staff from neonatal to adolescents, as well as supporting a number of teams across the Trust, such as, sepsis, intensive care and stroke. Provision of simulation in dentistry has increased over the year with the addition of emergency programmes for foundation and core dentists, with positive feedback. The inclusion of simulation in the foundation training programme has continued with aspirations to mirror the successful Core Medical Trainee programme previously introduced.

The education programme designed to support internationally recruited nurses has continued to excel during the year. In addition, the Care Certificate Programme has further developed, since appointing the Clinical Education Support Tutor, with 111 healthcare assistants (HCAs) currently undertaking the programme and 13 successfully completing the qualification. A proposal was agreed for HCAs that have completed the newly devised Assessor Preparation Course, to become assessors of the Care Certificate. This will develop HCA skills in assessing and evaluating their colleagues' practice and provide additional assessors to support the Care Certificate, releasing frontline nurses to focus on being mentors and preceptors. A Care Certificate Policy has been implemented to ensure that the process is standardised.

A new Preceptorship Programme will be launched in April 2019. This will be a 10 day programme and aims to follow a patient's journey from admission to discharge using both simulation and theory. Newly qualified nurses are also invited to attend ongoing development sessions and professional discussion meetings at 3, 6, 9, 12

and 18 months that will be held by the Clinical Education Support Tutor and other healthcare professionals within the Trust. The professional discussion meetings explore progress and their thoughts on the Trust's Preceptorship Programme. The development sessions aim to provide newly qualified nurses with more advanced skills such as dealing with difficult conversations and resilience training.

3.2. Patient safety

One of the Trust's key priorities in 2018-19 was to continue to reduce avoidable harm. Avoidable harm is harm that can be prevented.

3.2.1. Falls

The Trust has sustained improvements in falls prevention for patients admitted to the hospital. The falls team continue to develop strategies to minimise the occurrence of inpatient falls and as a result have been able to reduce the number of harm incidents compared to last year.

In 2018-19, the Trust has reported:

- 5% decrease in all inpatient falls
- 18% decrease in falls incidents resulting in severe harm or above

The Trust has developed and implemented a new falls strategy covering 2018 to 2021. The strategy focuses on seven key areas for improvement:

- Using data to drive improvement
- Lesson learning and information sharing
- Procurement of equipment/services
- Changing culture
- Education and awareness
- Planning and implementation of falls prevention care
- Planning and implementation of post falls care

3.2.2. Venous thromboembolism (VTE)

VTE covers both deep vein thrombosis (DVT) and its possible consequence, pulmonary embolism (PE). A DVT is a blood clot that develops in the deep veins of the leg. However, if the blood clot becomes mobile in the blood stream it can travel to the lungs and cause a blockage (PE) that could lead to death.

Preventing VTE is a national and Trust priority. The risk of hospital-acquired VTE can be greatly reduced by risk assessing patients on admission to hospital and taking appropriate action. This might include prescribing and administration of appropriate medication to prevent blood clots and application of specialised stockings.

VTE risk assessments were completed in 95.92% of patients in 2018-19 compared to 93.7% in 2017-18, exceeding the national target of 95%.

The Trust has increased the number of risk assessments completed and the appropriate prevention interventions by:

- Implementing an electronic VTE risk assessment tool, integrated to the new patient administration system, Medway, enabling real time performance reviews
- Introducing and sharing of compliance dashboards twice daily
- Undertaking a root cause analysis investigation of all cases of Hospital Acquired Thrombosis in order to prevent it happening again
- Providing immediate feedback/education to ward staff, disseminate learning points and implementing any actions for improvement
- On-going VTE training for all clinical staff.

There has been a 16% reduction in Hospital Acquired Thrombosis, from 31 in 2017-18 to 26 in 2018-19.

3.2.3. Medicine safety

The inpatient electronic prescribing and medicines administration (ePMA) system is now live in all medical inpatient locations in the Trust. The ePMA system enables early identification and rectification of prescribing issues, for example, the use of appropriate antibiotic usage for suspected infections. The system also facilitates electronic ordering of non-stock items significantly speeding up supply and reducing the likelihood of missed doses due to medication unavailability. An electronic transfer of ePMA linked e-discharges is being utilised to further expedite the processing of prescriptions for discharging patients in a timely manner.

The Trust has continued to reduce the number of medication incidents in 2018-19 compared to 2017-18, supported through proactive work streams led by pharmacy:

- 25% decrease in all prescribing errors
- 2% decrease in all administration errors
- 4% decrease in dispensing errors
- 86% decrease in medication incidents resulting in moderate/severe harm or death
- 36% decrease in harmful medication incidents

3.2.4. Pressure ulcers

The Trust is committed to reducing the number of hospital-acquired pressure ulcers developed whilst the patients are receiving inpatient care. The Trust continues to have zero tolerance to hospital acquired grade 4 pressure ulcers and will continue to seek to reduce harm from pressure ulcers, which it has maintained in the last 5 years. In addition, the Trust has reduced avoidable grade 2 pressure ulcers by 18% (5), compared to 2017-18.

It is projected that compared with last year there will be minimal change in the incidence of avoidable grade 1 pressure ulcers. However, this supports high quality care and innovation used in the Trust, as these ulcers have resolved and not deteriorated to a grade 2, due to the commitment of staff, education and availability of resources/equipment.

The Trust has implemented innovative schemes to prevent the development of pressure ulcers which includes:

- Early to bed initiative in the Emergency Department resulting in all patients being risk assessed and placed directly on appropriate pressure relieving mattresses or air mattresses to prevent tissue damage
- Introduction of moisture lesion protocol, supported by a prevalence audit demonstrating a reduction in moisture lesions, supporting the benefits of the introduction of the protocol
- Introduction of 'Heels RED - think BED' initiative aimed at reducing the chances of developing heel pressure risks associated with electric profiling beds
- Collaborative working with NHSE Cheshire and Mersey Pressure Ulcer Collaborative Group to improve care standards and innovation in pressure ulcer prevention through shared learning and development of unified protocols

- Continued skill development and training in pressure ulcer prevention for clinical staff, enabling implementation of preventative care and early recognition of tissue damage

3.2.5. Theatre safety

The Trust's Operating Theatre Department have a number of initiatives to improve safety of patients, which are highlighted below:

- Development and implementation of National Safety Standards for Invasive Procedures (NatSSIPs) to reduce the number of patient safety incidents related to invasive procedures in which surgical never events could occur
- Development and implementation of Local Safety Standards for Invasive Procedures (LocSSIPs), as per the national guidance. These documents provide a framework for ensuring safety checks are carried out using a nationally approved methodology
- Further work to improve the structure and content of the communication tool used in theatre, enabling all team members to contribute to ensuring safety and minimising errors
- Commitment to 'being open' and enabling staff to speak up in case of any concerns. The Operating Department continues to use the hierarchy challenge tool (HALT), which offers a series of prompts for any team member to tell the team they have a concern. The development and adoption of this tool by the Trust has been recognised as a national pioneer in CQC publication 'Opening the door report' published in December 2018
https://www.cqc.org.uk/sites/default/files/2018_1224_openingthedor_report.pdf
- Introduction of crisis trolleys in the operating department, providing a multipurpose equipment base to replace multiple trolleys and equipment used in challenging emergency situations in theatre.

This ensures the right equipment is available for clinical teams in the event of a clinical emergency, enabling the right care and treatment to be given to the patient as soon as possible

- Introduction of clinical practice leads, to support the safe development of newly qualified Operating Department Practitioners (ODPs) and registered nurses newly employed to theatre settings. Clinical practice leads provide training and clinical supervision enabling the development of a safe and effective clinical workforce
- Support for the workforce and safe staffing levels through active recruitment process, with higher levels of retention rates. The department has very low turnover rates and has improved retention rates compared with previous years, demonstrating recognition of the support offered to all levels of staff members and higher levels of staff satisfaction
- Operating theatres have also reengineered the patient journey to the theatre, by developing forward wait areas. The new processes help improve the overall patient experience with reduced delays with surgery. The innovative process also offers enhancement in patient safety, by facilitating streamlined checking processes to be carried out before surgery
- The department has also invested in innovative approaches in obstetric care with the introduction of a second midwife or midwife assistant in theatre. Additional resources available allow the midwife to attend to and support new mum and baby, as well as the family member present, allowing the clinical teams to focus on the surgical procedure, enhancing both the safety and the experience for the mother

- Continued to invest heavily in training of clinical and non-clinical skills, in recognition of the value of highly skilled staff to delivering safe care. Simulation exercises are regularly carried out involving multi-disciplinary team members. These exercises are undertaken to familiarise staff members with unfamiliar situations and rare clinical emergencies. The training is underpinned with the principles of human factors and just culture. Incremental challenging scenarios are used to develop skills and confidence amongst staff members

The Operating department has been able to achieve:

- 71% reduction in theatre-related episodes of moderate harms and above
- 17% reduction in all theatre related incidents

3.2.6. National Early Warning Score (NEWS2)

The Trust is a leading performer in transforming clinical care with the adoption of technology. In 2018-19, the Trust aimed to translate these high standards of care into earlier detection of and management of clinically deteriorating patients through the implementation of eNEWS2 electronic observation. NEWS2 has received formal endorsement from NHS England and NHS Improvement to become the early warning system for identifying acutely ill patients, including those with sepsis, in hospitals in England and was implemented across the Trust in March 2019.

3.2.7. Being open – duty of candour

The Trust is committed to ensuring that we tell our patients and their families/carers if there has been an error or omission resulting in harm. This duty of candour is a legal duty on hospital, community and mental health trusts to inform and apologise to patients if there have been mistakes in their care that have, or could have, led to significant harm (categorised as moderate harm or greater in severity).

The Trust promotes a culture of openness, honesty and transparency. Our statutory duty of candour is delivered under the Trust's Being Open - A Duty of Candour Policy, which sets out our commitment to being open when communicating with patients, their relatives and carers about any failure in care or treatment. This includes an apology and a full explanation of what happened with all the available facts. The Trust operates a learning culture, within which all staff feel confident to raise concerns when risks are identified and then to contribute fully to the investigation process in the knowledge that learning from harm and the prevention of future harm are the organisation's key priorities.

- The Trust's incident reporting system has a mandatory section to record duty of candour
- Weekly incident review meetings are held, where duty of candour requirements are agreed on a case-by-case basis allowing timely action and monitoring. This allows the Trust to ensure that it meets its legal obligations
- The Trust has continued to raise the profile of duty of candour through the lessons learned processes and incident review meetings
- Duty of candour training is also included as part of mandatory training and root cause analysis training for staff

3.2.8. Never events

Never Events are described by NHS England as serious incidents that are wholly preventable. Guidance or safety recommendations that provide strong systemic protective barriers are available at a national level and should be implemented by all healthcare providers.

Each Never Event has a potential to cause serious harm or death. However, serious harm or death is not required for the incident to be categorised as a Never Event. Never Events include incidents such as: wrong site surgery, retained foreign object post-surgical procedure and chest or neck entrapment in bedrails.

For the period 2018-19, the Trust reported one Never Event, relating to a retained foreign object post-surgical procedure.

The Trust has undertaken significant improvement actions to mitigate the risk of reoccurrence of similar incidents, including:

- Improved surgery safety checklists
- Improvements in theatre environment enabling recording of clinical equipment used
- Development of human factors awareness rolled out for theatre staff alongside the introduction of Local Safety Standards for Invasive Procedures (LocSSIPs)
- Staff empowered to challenge areas of concern
- Regular communication to staff through the learning events to share lessons, trend analysis and share areas of good practice

The Trust is committed to using Root Cause Analysis (RCA) to investigate adverse events, including Never Events. This approach is underpinned by the Trust's commitment to ensuring an open and honest culture in which staff are encouraged to report any errors or incidents and encourage feedback in the knowledge that the issues will be fairly investigated and any learning and improvement opportunities implemented.

3.2.9. Infection control

The Health and Social Care Act 2008 requires all trusts to have clear arrangements for the effective prevention, detection and control of healthcare associated infection (HCAI). The Trust's Director of Infection Prevention and Control (DIPC) is the Director of Nursing, Midwifery and Governance. She has Board level responsibility for infection control and chairs the Hospital Infection Prevention Group.

The Infection Prevention Team undertakes a rolling programme of infection prevention audits of each ward and department, with individual reports discussed with ward managers and teams for action. Infection prevention indicators are included within the Quality Ward Accreditation Tool (QCAT).

The Trust's infection prevention priorities are to:

- Promote and sustain infection prevention policy and practice in the pursuit of patient, service user and staff safety within the Trust
- Adopt and promote evidence-based infection prevention practice across the Trust
- Identify, monitor and prevent the spread of pathogenic organisms, including multi-resistant organisms throughout the Trust
- Reduce the incidence of healthcare associated infections by working collaboratively across the whole health economy

During the reporting period April 2018 to March 2019, the Trust reported the following:

- MRSA bacteraemia (MRSAb): one positive blood sample, which was a contaminant, against a threshold of zero
- Clostridium Difficile infections (CDI): The Trust has a threshold of 40 cases in 2018-19 and has performed significantly better than this with 25 positive samples of which 12 were successfully appealed as there were no lapses in care

- Methicillin Sensitive Staphylococcus Aureus bacteraemia (MSSAb): The Trust has 31 cases of (MSSAb), To date, only four cases were deemed avoidable following post infection review (PIR)

Lessons learned from PIRs of MRSAb and CDI cases are shared Trust-wide via a monthly infection prevention report. Lessons learned include good practice identified, as well as areas for improvement. This information is also shared monthly with the CCGs.

The latest surgical site infection (SSI) rates related to elective hip and knee procedures from April 2018 to December 2018 are shown below:

- Hips 1.2% against a national average of 1%
- Knees 0.6% against a national average of 1.3%

There was a rise in SSI in total hip replacements following a move of the elective orthopaedic ward from 3Alpha to 3E Orthopaedics. Root cause analysis was undertaken on the five cases. One was deemed not an infection. Three were deemed unavoidable superficial infections and one case was an avoidable infection. The Infection Prevention Team has worked collaboratively with the Orthopaedic Directorate to review the patient pathway and ward environment in order to reduce the risk. The infections have reduced since the implementation of the risk reduction measures. Root cause analysis were undertaken for all cases of SSI.

In May 2016, the Government announced its ambition to halve healthcare associated (HCAI) Gram-negative bloodstream infections (GNBSIs) by 2021. As approximately three-quarters of E. coli BSIs occur before people are admitted to hospital, reduction requires a whole health economy approach. The Trust, in collaboration with CCGs and partners, has developed a health economy action plan particularly focusing on a

10% in-year reduction in urinary tract infections and to learn and share lessons. The Trust continues to work closely with the infection prevention, patient safety and quality teams in the wider health economy, attending collaborative meetings across the region in order to improve infection prevention and control practices and monitoring.

The Trust took part in the NHS Improvement National Urinary Tract Infection (UTI) Collaborative to reduce UTIs. A multi-disciplinary team approach was utilised and new initiatives were implemented including the 'Dip or Not to Dip' campaign aimed at reducing the inappropriate use of urinalysis for the diagnosis of UTI and changes in practice were shared Trust-wide and with the CCGs.

The Trust vaccinated over 95% of front-line staff, exceeding the national flu CQUIN target of 75%. In addition, the Trust promoted the flu vaccination with pregnant women and patients in long stay rehabilitation wards. This season, the Trust introduced flu vaccinators/champions for every ward and department to make it easier for staff to access vaccination. There were also peripatetic vaccinators throughout the Trust. During the flu season, the Trust had daily flu ward rounds undertaken by the DIPC and respiratory clinician.

The Trust has 21 Consultant infection control champions and over 70 link nurses who attend education and training and complete local audits to monitor compliance.

Key achievements for 2018-19 were:

- PLACE assessments achieved 100% for cleanliness for Whiston and St Helens sites
- Compliance with the prescribed CDI target and under the threshold for 4th consecutive year
- Continued SSI surveillance within elective hip and knee

- Achieved 75.5% aseptic non-touch technique (ANTT) competency for clinical staff
- 100% compliance with carbapenemase-producing enterobacteriaceae (CPE) and MRSA screening
- Ensured that there was infection prevention input into environmental monitoring systems and implementation of national standards for cleanliness and validation of standards
- Ensured there was infection prevention input into new builds and building modification
- Participated in NHSI UTI collaborative to reduce UTI from gram negative organisms
- Implemented electronic assessments for recording patients' bowel habit monitoring using the Bristol Stool Chart and also for CPE risk/screening assessment using the Patienttrack system.

3.2.10. Safety Thermometer

The NHS Safety Thermometer is a national improvement tool for measuring, monitoring and analysing patient harms and 'harm free' care during hospital stays. This measures four key harms: pressure ulcers, falls, catheter acquired urinary tract infection and VTE (blood clots). The Trust has continued to achieve over 98% new harm free care, that is harm that has occurred whilst an inpatient and is one of the best performing trusts in the region.

Data for all inpatients is collected on one day every month. This identifies patients who are admitted from home with harms and harms which occurred whilst in hospital. Specialist nursing staff validate the results from this audit. Once validated, the information is then submitted to the NHS Information Centre.

The Trust maintains good practice in relation to the prevention of pressure ulcers, falls with harm and VTE by:

- Ensuring education and training is available for all ward staff to enable them to complete and submit the NHS safety thermometer as required
- Weekly harm review meeting reviews all incidents across the Trust, including falls
- Bi-monthly Falls Improvement Group oversees the implementation of the revised falls strategy and performance manages the associated action plans
- Task and finish group reviewed the bedrail policy and associated falls risk assessment, which has since been implemented across all inpatient areas
- Ensuring, when possible, a one-to-one staffing ratio is implemented when indicated by the risk assessment for falls, which is being supported by a new Standard Operating Procedure – Supplementary Care
- Providing non-slip anti-embolic stockings
- Continuing to provide education for all clinical staff on VTE, resulting in increased compliance with the prescribing and administration of anticoagulants to prevent these occurring
- Nursing staff attending one hour tissue viability training every three years
- Access to a full day wound management training session
- Providing each ward with a comprehensive tissue viability folder as a staff resource

3.2.11. Safeguarding

The Trust takes its statutory responsibilities to safeguard vulnerable patients of all ages very seriously and welcomes external scrutiny of its robust policies, procedures and processes. The Trust submits quarterly key performance indicator data to the CCGs, including the Trust's policies, for external scrutiny. The Trust also submits responses to the Commissioning Standards template and progress against any required actions. Safeguarding compliance is monitored by St Helens CCG through key performance indicators, who then provide assurance to Halton and Knowsley CCG.

The Trust has a dedicated Safeguarding Team comprising of:

- Assistant Director of Safeguarding
- Named Nurse Safeguarding Children
- Named Doctor, Safeguarding Children
- Named Midwife

The team is supported by Specialist Safeguarding Nurses, a Specialist Midwife and administration staff.

The team provides support and delivers mandated safeguarding supervision, training and advice to all staff throughout the organisation and ensures that policies and procedures are reviewed regularly in line with current legislation, including all aspects of safeguarding, Prevent, child exploitation, trafficking and modern slavery. Standard operational procedures, underpinned with the appropriate staff training, have been introduced to ensure victims of forced genital mutilation are safeguarded effectively and patients are supported if at risk of or are a victim of domestic abuse, forced marriage, honour-based violence and child exploitation.

The Trust's Safeguarding Assurance Framework has separate safeguarding children and adults steering groups, which meet quarterly to discuss required actions, activity and updates on current practice and drive the safeguarding agenda within the Trust. Designated Nurses from the CCG are invited to the meetings for external scrutiny and to facilitate information sharing. These steering groups report directly to the Quality Committee quarterly and annual reports are taken to the Trust Board for both Safeguarding Children and Safeguarding Adults. These reports are subsequently shared with Local Safeguarding Adult and Children's Multi-Agency Boards and inform their annual reports accordingly.

3.2.11.1. Safeguarding Children

The Trust continues to work pro-actively with St Helens, Knowsley and Halton Local Safeguarding Children Boards (LSCB) as either a board or committee member. Changes to the LSCB structures and statutory function following the Wood Review are ongoing and due to be finalised in 2019, however, the Trust will ensure that safeguarding continues to be a priority and will maintain partnership working across the footprint.

The Safeguarding Team contributes, as required, to multi-agency reviews including serious case reviews, practice learning or management reviews. Any identified learning points are shared across the Trust and any necessary actions implemented to improve practice.

The Trust continues to support and safeguard children at risk of all forms of abuse contributing to the 'early help' agenda and multi-agency safeguarding procedures.

3.2.11.2. Safeguarding Adults

The Trust continues to work pro-actively with St Helens, Halton and the Merseyside Safeguarding Adult Boards as either a board or committee member.

The Trust, along with partner agencies, continues to work in line with current statutory guidance, The Care Act 2014, which is now fully embedded in practice. The Safeguarding Team contributes to any multi-agency reviews including safeguarding adult reviews, domestic homicide reviews and management reviews. Any identified learning points are shared across the Trust and any necessary actions implemented to improve practice as required.

The Trust continues to support the patient journey of adults who have additional needs or who are identified as potentially being adults at risk. This cohort of patients includes people with a learning disability, mental health issues, substance misuse or any other vulnerability factor. The Safeguarding Team works closely with staff to identify and safeguard these individuals.

3.2.11.3. Mental Capacity Act and Deprivation of Liberty Safeguards

The Trust's Mental Capacity Act Policy and Procedure is embedded into clinical practice. Applications for Deprivation of Liberty Safeguards have increased in line with local and national trends. The Trust meets regularly with relevant agencies to share best practice and to ensure Trust practice follows current legislation.

Quarterly information is supplied to the CCG regarding the applications that are made and the outcome of the application. An MCA audit and the quarterly submissions data indicates that the referrals are appropriate. The Trust will review all MCA/DoLS processes in line with the forthcoming Liberty Protection Safeguards, to ensure robust

arrangements are in place when the Trust becomes the Responsible Body for reviewing applications, signing off authorisations and monitoring any restrictions that are deemed necessary, under the new arrangements.

3.2.11.4. Domestic Abuse

The Trust actively contributes to the local domestic abuse agenda with completion of MERIT risk assessment tools, signposting to relevant support agencies or Multi-Agency Risk Assessment Conferences (MARAC), active participation at both St Helens and Knowsley MARAC meetings, together with reports by exception to Halton and Warrington.

The Trust Domestic Abuse Policy ensures support is offered to both patients and staff members who may be affected by domestic violence and/or abuse. Training is embedded in all levels of both safeguarding children and adult sessions to ensure that the workforce is competent in the identification and support of domestic abuse victims and children.

Contribution to Domestic Homicide Reviews are undertaken as required as requested by Community Safety Partnerships.

3.2.11.5. Learning Disability

Guidance has been implemented for patients with a learning disability attending any department within the Trust on how to meet their individual needs. This is supported by a toolkit to ensure that staff are able to provide the highest standards of care. The Trust works with partner agencies to support the patient journey and to share best practice. Safeguarding Adult staff support this agenda, highlighting and supporting those patients who attend the Trust requiring reasonable adjustments and support with communication whilst using Trust services.

3.3. Clinical effectiveness

The Clinical Effectiveness Council meets monthly and monitors key outcome and effectiveness indicators, such as mortality, nationally benchmarked cardiac arrest data, critical care performance, hip fracture performance, readmissions, clinical audit and application of National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE) guidance.

3.3.1. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence Guidance

St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust has a responsibility for implementing NICE guidance in order to ensure that:

- Patients receive the best and most appropriate treatment
- NHS resources are not wasted by inappropriate treatment
- There is equity through consistent application of NICE guidance/quality standards

The Trust must demonstrate to stakeholders that NICE guidance/quality standards are being implemented within the Trust and across the health community. This is a regulatory requirement that is subject to scrutiny by the CQC. Responsibility for supporting the implementation and monitoring NICE guidance compliance activity moved to the Quality Improvement and Clinical Audit (QICA) Team in January 2018.

141 pieces of new or updated NICE guidance were released during the year. There is a system in place to ensure all relevant guidance is distributed to the appropriate clinical lead to assess its relevance and the Trust's compliance with the requirements. Action plans are produced for any shortfalls to ensure compliance is

achieved. Compliance will be rigorously assessed by mandatory departmental compliance audits reportable through the Trust audit meetings. The Trust is fully compliant with 36 of those guidance papers issued and working towards achieving the remainder.

3.3.2. Mortality

The overall mortality rate for the Trust using the government's preferred measure, Summary Hospital Level Mortality Indicator (SHMI), is 0.99, which is better than expected, better than England, better than in previous years and second best in Cheshire & Merseyside.

The Trust has better than expected, better than England and better than in previous years rates for both of the other commonly used measures: the Standardised Mortality Ratio (SMR), which is 95.9% and the Hospital Standardised Mortality Ratio (HSMR), which is 98%.

Crude mortality (the simplest measure) has fallen steadily over time and has been consistently better than England and better than the North West average for the past 10 years.

3.3.3. Clinical audit

The Trust has an active clinical audit programme and is an active participant in required national audits where performance is strong. Details of the work undertaken this year are contained in section 2.4.2 above.

3.3.4. Intensive Care National Audit & Research Centre (ICNARC)

The Trust performs well against the national quality indicators, an example being the low number of sepsis admissions compared to other units. This demonstrates that the Trust has a positive response rate to identifying high risk sepsis patients early. There is an ongoing issue with delayed discharges from Critical Care, therefore work continues to ensure the timely step down of patients to wards and substantial progress is being made to ensure patients are discharged from intensive care into a ward bed within four hours of being identified as suitable.

3.3.5. Copeland risk adjustment barometer (CRAB)

The Trust has established a CRAB Benchmarking Group to review trends in mortality and complications at Trust level, department level and surgeon level. CRAB creates an accurate picture of surgical consultants' practice, adjusting for presenting risk, operation complexity and intra-operative complications. It helps to identify best practice and removes the risks of misinterpreting crude mortality statistics. At present, CRAB Surgical only reflects the activity of surgical in-patient episodes and does not assess day-case activity, nor does it reflect the management of medical patients within the Trust.

The CRAB methodology is based on the POSSUM system, the clinical audit system which is widely recommended by national bodies, including the Royal College of Surgeons. It provides high quality clinical process and outcome information, via a wide range of reports based on extensive data captured before or at the time of operation and documenting the patient's condition.

For each case, the risk of mortality or morbidity is calculated using POSSUM algorithms and the raw data may be reviewed by looking at individual cases in the risk report.

Any concerning trends or higher than expected complication or mortality rates are examined for potential causality within the CRAB Benchmarking Group and by each of the core members of the specialty in question. Issues and concerns identified at the CRAB meetings are reviewed by the group as a whole and reviewed in more depth by specialty CRAB representatives. This more detailed review is fed back to the CRAB lead and the reports are adjusted to reflect this. Action plans are generated for each of the monthly meetings and reviewed by all members of the CRAB team to ensure that the issues have been addressed. If improvements in performance are not seen then it is the responsibility of the CRAB representative to escalate to the clinical director of that specialty. Further escalation if required is to the divisional director and any persistent concerns relayed to the Clinical Effectiveness Council (CEC).

The outcomes from this group are fed into the CEC on a quarterly basis, for example, it was identified that post-operative chest infections were higher than national and that an increase in post-operative chest physiotherapy, especially in orthopaedics, general surgery and urology would be beneficial. The Divisional Director of Surgery and CRAB lead attend the CEC.

3.3.6. National Community Hospitals Intermediate Care Audit

The Trust's intermediate care wards participated in the national community hospitals intermediate care audit in 2018, which is published by the NHS Benchmarking Network Community Hospitals.

The findings for Newton Hospital indicated the following positives:

- Higher than national average at accepting step up patients from the community to avoid attending the Emergency Department
- Higher than nationally bed occupancy levels
- Higher than national average Patient Reported Experience Measure (PREM) scores
- Better than national average of referral to commencement of service
- Better than national average of people going back to their usual residence following the service
- Better than national average of improved Modified Barthell scores, which are used to determine the service users' level of dependency on admission to the service and again on discharge

A number of actions are being taken to improve the service provided, including review of two week pathway for suitable patients to reduce length of stay and increasing the number of patients admitted within 48 hours.



3.3.7. Acute Kidney Injury (AKI)

Acute Kidney Injury (AKI) affects an estimated 10% of all patients at St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust, with patients with AKI spending 4.7 days longer in hospital according to NICE. NCEPOD states that appropriate intervention in the identification and management of AKI patients will have a positive impact on their care, reducing length of stay, the burden to critical care units and readmissions within 30 days.

The Trust implemented a multidisciplinary AKI Team comprising three Advanced Nurse Practitioners and a specialist AKI Pharmacist. The team is led clinically by the Consultant and Clinical Director for Acute Medicine. This team was tasked with modernising the quality of care to improve outcomes of patients with AKI. The team provides both care and education; patients are reviewed by AKI specialist nurses and ward pharmacists to ensure that appropriate medical care is provided to limit progression of an AKI and avoid permanent renal damage. The team also provide advice and education to healthcare professionals and are involved in writing and reviewing Trust policies relating to AKI, hydration and fluids.

In 2018-19 the team:

- Collaborated with 'Think Kidneys' (NHS England and Renal Registry Support Programme) to lead an inaugural AKI Nurse Education day for the North
- Conducted health promotion on World Kidney Day and patient focus groups
- Presented on improving timeliness of medication review in patients with AKI posters at the following conferences:
 - Clinical Pharmacy Congress
 - UK Kidney Week
 - UK Renal Pharmacy Group

- Led a workshop in September 2018 for UK Renal Pharmacy Group
- Were invited to present at an AQuA collaborative
- Were finalists at the HSJ Patient Safety Congress awards in 2 categories
 - Deteriorating patients and rapid response systems
 - Improving safety in medicines management

The AKI pharmacist developed the AKI e-learning package for the Centre for Postgraduate Pharmacy Education – due to launch later in 2019.

3.3.8. Promoting health

The Trust actively promotes the health and wellbeing of patients by undertaking a holistic assessment on admission that looks at physical, social, emotional and spiritual needs. Patients are referred or signposted to relevant services, for example; dieticians, stop smoking services and substance misuse. The initial review of patients includes a number of risk assessments that are used to highlight specific concerns that are acted upon, including nutrition and hydration and falls. The Trust has a Smokefree Policy in place that ensures a healthy environment for staff, patients and visitors, with measures in place to support staff and patients to give up smoking. The Trust has been participating in the risky behaviours CQuIN, whereby patients are asked on admission about smoking and alcohol intake and then provided with support and guidance as required. In addition, the Maternity Service actively promotes breast-feeding.

The Trust works in partnership with other agencies to provide holistic services throughout the patient's journey to ensure a seamless service, supported by integrated pathways across the

hospital and community settings. Examples of this include the work of our Community Falls Team, who work collaboratively with the local council, primary and community care and our Infection Prevention and Control Team who liaise closely with community teams and GP services.

The Trust has an effective volunteering service and has 360 volunteers currently working across the organisation, with recruitment events held every other month. The Trust's Volunteer Department has continued to work with the Department for Work & Pensions to support people back into employment, through building confidence, learning new skills and improving both mental and physical wellbeing through becoming a volunteer at the Trust. Current volunteers are offered a variety of training opportunities that will be advantageous should they wish to apply for Trust jobs or employment outside of the organisation.

The volunteers undertake a wide range of roles throughout the Trust, including:

- Meeting and greeting patients on arrival at Whiston and St Helens hospitals, outpatients and the Emergency Department, including helping to direct people to the appropriate location and providing information to patients and visitors
- Supporting pharmacy to achieve timely delivery of discharge medications
- Providing befriending service on inpatient wards and undertaking enhanced roles such as dining companions, prevention of delirium and spiritual care
- Administration roles, undertaking wide range of duties across the Trust, including maintaining notice boards and leaflet racks in different departments

The Volunteer Service is also working on a ward telephone answering pilot and supporting the Trust's Pets as Therapy policy, as therapy dogs can help patients in many ways, including reducing anxiety.

In addition, the Trust has signed the Step into Health Pledge to champion and assist the transition of ex-military staff into NHS employment. NHS Employers and the Royal Foundation support the pledge.

3.4. Patient experience

Patient experience is at the heart of the Trust's vision to deliver 5 star patient care and we are keen to learn from all our patient and carer experiences so we can continuously make improvements and share good practice.

Patient stories remain a pivotal part of the patient experience agenda throughout the Trust. Patient stories are shared in a number of forums including the Trust Board, Patient Experience Council and the Patient Experience and Dignity Champions group. Patients and their families are welcomed and encouraged to present their experiences in their own words and make suggestions to improve the patient journey.

Patient stories have contributed to a number of positive service improvements, including the introduction of open visiting in Critical Care, improving the responsiveness of phlebotomy services for patients receiving palliative care to enable blood tests to be performed before or within their clinic appointment and the recruitment of additional staff to the palliative care team including a bereavement lead. One story has also been shared with colleagues in the local Clinical Commissioning Group to disseminate learning and support the development of integrated pathways.

A range of mediums have been used to deliver stories including patients and their relatives attending in person and submitting stories for staff to deliver on their behalf.

The Patient Experience Manager engages with at least five patients or carers each day in a range of settings, including wards and outpatient clinics. This provides valuable information regarding the patient and carer experience 'as it happens'. This allows prompt identification of any individual issues which can be easily resolved or may require escalation to clinical staff and also any themes or trends that may be emerging across the Trust.

A number of actions have taken place this year to enhance the patient and carer experience. These include the approval of an Animal and Pet Therapy Policy to provide guidance for those patients who may benefit from animal assisted therapy while in hospital and a review of arrangements for transgender patients attending gynaecology clinic following their transition. Amendments have also been made to the automated message left when attempting to obtain feedback from patients following

attendance at outpatient clinics. This was completed in direct response to information received from a patient and their relative.

A Carers' Passport is also under development that will be recognised across a number of trusts in the area. This will recognise carers as partners in care to improve the experience of both patients and their carers.

The Trust has continued to engage with patients via a number of patient participation groups. Forums take place within the specialties of paediatrics, maternity, diabetes, gastroenterology, the continence service and rheumatology. The Trust-wide patient participation group was re-launched at an event held in January 2019 and was attended by a wide range of participants. This provided the opportunity for staff to share the Trust's developments with patients, carers and members of the community, who were also able to provide their comments on the new draft Patient Experience Strategy.

What our patients said about us in 2018-19

Radiology

I was sent today to Whiston Radiology Department for an abdominal scan. My wife and I were treated very well by the very caring staff at the unit. Everything was explained very thoroughly and the staff were on hand to answer any questions that we had. This is the third time that I have had a CT scan at Whiston and I am always treated very well. I cannot fault the staff in any way and even though they were very busy you never feel neglected during busy times.

Ward 3A

I was admitted to Ward 3A at Whiston Hospital on Christmas Day with an infected hand. The care I received was excellent. All of the staff were helpful and caring. The ward was very clean and a pleasant restful environment. I'm very grateful to everyone who was there for me when I needed medical care I'm sure they would have rather been at home. Thank you everyone for managing to be so professional and pleasant despite being at work on Christmas Day.

Stroke ward

Nurses on the Stroke ward were brilliant and gave care of the highest standard. Many quite young nurses were brilliant in their devotion to patient care, watching very elderly constantly and doing all they could to alleviate any difficulties.

Cardiology

Staff in the Cardiology Department were absolutely brilliant. They were efficient, cheerful, and extremely helpful, especially the Cardiac Nurses. Excellent treatment and customer service skills.

Maternity, Special Care Baby unit and Paediatrics

My baby was born prematurely at 34 weeks. The staff and doctors on the Special Care Baby Unit (SCBU) are absolutely outstanding, the level of care and respect they give is second to none. After coming home for a little short while my little boy was admitted to Ward 3F and spent time in high dependency unit. I really can't thank all the staff enough especially the paediatric doctor, she looked after my son on SCBU and on 3F she made me feel so at ease at such a difficult time. She and along with all the medical staff made my son better and for that I can't thank them enough!!



3.4.1. Friends and Family Test

The Friends and Family Test (FFT) asks patients if they would recommend the ward or department where they recently received healthcare to their friends or family if they needed similar care or treatment. It is an important feedback tool that supports the fundamental principle that people who use NHS services should have the opportunity to provide feedback in real-time about their experience. The feedback gathered is used to identify themes or trends, stimulate local improvement and empower staff to carry out changes that make a difference to patients and their care.

The Trust uses a variety of survey options, with inpatient ward areas and maternity services providing patients with a postcard on discharge and Emergency Department and outpatient areas use texting and interactive voice mail service.

The Trust's inpatient response rate at the end of March 2019 was 33.1% compared to the national average of 24.6% (based on March 2019 inpatient national data and including independent sector providers). Each ward or department within the Trust monitors the patient feedback and creates 'you said, we did' posters for display. These posters reflect our response as a result of patient comments and are invaluable in maintaining staff motivation and influencing change.

Some examples include:

Allen Day Unit	You said "The Parkinson group therapy classes take place over 8 weeks. Could this be extended as much more could be gained."	We did As a result of the patient comment and audit of the service the Parkinson group therapy sessions will now extend to 12 weeks. Thank you for this comment to improve our service.
Outpatients	You said "Appointment running over half an hour late with no indication as to why"	We did We apologise for any delays in clinic, we will ensure that staff keep our patients informed of any delays alongside an explanation of the cause of the delay.
Ophthalmology Clinic	You said Staff very friendly and helpful putting me at ease, lady who treated me was very professional and caring	We did We are pleased to hear of your experience. We endeavour to treat our patients in a professional and compassionate manner. I will pass your comments on to the staff.
Delivery Suite	You said Enjoyed use of bath. Delivery suite very relaxed and calm.	We did We have worked hard to improve the birthing environment in our Midwife-led Unit and Delivery Suite rooms and it's great to receive feedback that shows it's appreciated.

3.4.2. Complaints

The Trust takes patients' complaints extremely seriously. Staff work hard to ensure that patients and carers concerns are acted on as soon as they are identified and that there is a timely response to rectify any issues that are raised at a local level, through the Trust's PALS team, or through the AskAnn email. Ward and departmental managers and matrons are available for patients and their carers to discuss their care and to provide timely resolution to ensure patients receive the highest standards of care. Each area has a patient experience notice board to highlight how patients and carers can raise a concern and this is also included on the information table placemats available for patients. At times, however, patients and their carers may wish to raise a formal complaint and these are thoroughly investigated so that patients are provided with a comprehensive written response.

In 2018-19, the Trust received 267 new complaints that were opened for investigation. This represents an increase of 18.7% in comparison to 2017-18, when the Trust received 225 new complaints. However, there was a decrease in the number of complainants that were dissatisfied with the initial response and raised a stage two complaint; 37 in 2018-19 compared to 44 in 2017-18. The total number of PALS contacts increased by 36% to 3174 in 2018-19.

Work remains ongoing to improve the timeliness of responses to those who made the effort to highlight concerns about their care. The average time to respond to new complaints within the agreed timescale has improved significantly from 67% in 2017-18 to 92.1% in 2018-19.

The Trust has continued to conduct the Complaints Satisfaction Surveys throughout 2018-19, with a copy of the survey sent out with all response letters. There were 25 responses in total received in 2018-19, a 9.3% response rate. A summary of the findings is below, noting that the % figures provided are based on the number of respondents answering the specific question:

- 92% found it very or fairly easy to complain
- 88% felt that their complaint had been responded to in a reasonable timescale
- 80% confirmed that they felt that they had been treated with respect throughout the process with 16% confirming that they had been treated with respect some of the time
- 88% confirmed that the reasons for the Trust's decision was made clear to them
- 76% were very or fairly satisfied with the way the complaint was handled

The Complaints Team are continuing to work hard on reducing the time taken to provide complaints responses, whilst maintaining the quality of the investigation and response.

A number of actions were taken as a result of complaints made in 2018-19. The issues highlighted through a complaint relating to a missed diagnosis at birth involving a newborn were shared at the Obstetrics and Gynaecology Risk Management Group, Paediatric Clinical Governance and Surgical Care Group Quality Governance and Risk Management meetings. A task and finish group has been established to review processes for paediatric referrals following birth and work is in progress to develop a robust failsafe system of monitoring referrals following the newborn and infant physical examination (NIPE).

Other actions taken include:

- Staff reminded to wear their identity badge at all times and to introduce themselves at the start of every shift
- Introduction of a new template for plastic surgery secretariat to use to inform GP and breast surgeons of any abnormal reports that they are made aware of. The aim of this is to ensure that investigation reports are sent from plastic surgery without delay
- Additional staff have been appointed following expansions in the Lilac Centre
- New patient experience board has been placed in the Lilac Centre
- Radiology has implemented a daily 'stat run' which identifies what needs to be reported on in priority order with a new internal escalation process for radiology staff to follow
- The Omnicell (medicines dispensing computer) now flags up a warning when patients are prescribed Clarithromycin to make sure they are not on a statin, which is contraindicated



3.5. Service developments

3.5.1. Surgical Care Group

3.5.1.1. Nurse Led Fascia Iliac Compartment Blocks (FICB)

The Trust's Hip Fracture Nurse Specialist is currently working with the anaesthetists to complete the necessary training and competencies to perform a fascia iliac compartment block to reduce pain. Pain can have significant physical and psychological effects on the patient, as well as requiring opiate pain relief, which can lead to respiratory depression, hypotension and confusion. Using fewer opiates for elderly patients should lead to less episodes of delirium. The patients that have had this procedure so far have been extremely comfortable and not as confused post operatively. This helps with therapy and supports early discharge.

3.5.1.2. Introduction of virtual fracture clinics

An orthopaedic consultant and a physiotherapist undertake two sessions per week and contact patients by telephone to ask a set of pre-agreed questions relating to fracture, pain and pain management. The service is aimed at patients who will not require interventions such as cast change/application, repeat X-rays, removal of sutures or wound checks. The provision of virtual fracture clinics will free up appointment slots for patients who need to be seen face-to-face and provide better flexibility and communication for patients. This initiative is currently being evaluated.

3.5.1.3. Burns and Plastics

An Outreach Burns Nurse Specialist has been appointed to provide support in the community in all aspects of burn care, supporting admission/readmission avoidance especially in

patients with infections such as multiple-drug-resistant pseudomonas aeruginosa. The Outreach Burns Nurse Specialist also acts as clinical educator, providing education to district nurses and walk in centres regarding burn care.

3.5.1.4. Maternity

The Maternity Service has been involved within the National Maternal and Neonatal Health Safety Collaborative and is focussing on the recognition and management of deterioration in babies, including improved processes relating to the neonatal sepsis pathway. The aim of phase one of the locally designed Improving Neonatal Sepsis Pathway Outcomes (INSPO) Project was to increase the number of eligible babies who receive intravenous (IV) antibiotics within an hour, without separation of mum and baby, by 75% by March 2019. The project has achieved 100% of all babies from the Delivery Suite receiving IV antibiotics, within an hour, from decision to delivery, without separation from mum, since December 2018. Phase two of the project will spread the improvement to the whole of the Maternity Service concentrating on the postnatal ward.

The Maternity Services has developed pathways of care to achieve the national ambition of 'Continuity of Carer' for 20% of women. The service has successfully booked 45% of women onto a continuity of carer pathway, exceeding the national target. The development of these pathways has seen extensive improvements and re-design of community midwifery teams and midwifery-led clinical care. This work has further seen the development and utilisation of midwifery-led services in the alongside midwifery led unit, the 'Sapphire Suite', with an increase of women opting to mobilise and use the birthing pool. Development of pathways to achieve continuity of carer for high-risk women has been concentrated on women who are having their next birth after caesarean section.

3.5.2. Medical Care Group

3.5.2.1. Nutrition

The Trust's new Nutrition Specialist Nurse has made a significant contribution to improving patients' nutritional care, supporting admission avoidance, reducing length of inpatient stay and improving the quality of nutritional care. This has been achieved via daily parenteral nutrition (PN) ward rounds, nutrition multi-disciplinary team clinics and the delivery of timely assessments and interventions for patients who require total parenteral nutrition (TPN), percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomies (PEG), naso-gastric (NG) tubes/nasal bridles or naso-jejunal (NJ) tube insertions. Timely reviews of patients in the Emergency Department has aided those who have removed feeding tubes to have them replaced quickly and facilitated early discharge home, saving approximately 82 bed days. The initiation of a telephone helpline and nurse-led day case clinic for patients requiring assessment, care or removal of feeding tubes has led to significant improvements in the care for outpatients, with regular follow up for those requiring it.

3.5.2.2. Gastrointestinal (GI) Physiology

GI Physiology is a new service providing diagnostic testing to primarily assess gut function, through the investigation of patients with symptoms of dysphagia, gastroesophageal reflux disease (GORD), faecal incontinence and chronic constipation. Investigations are performed as day case procedures using state of the art equipment to measure acidic/non-acidic reflux and/or assessing muscle pressure in the oesophagus, stomach or anorectum.

Small Bowel Capsule Endoscopy is also a new procedure to the Trust. It involves the swallowing of a small, wireless camera capsule to assess small bowel pathology. This investigation allows for the assessment of the full length of the small bowel, which cannot be achieved by conventional endoscopy. This can improve the diagnoses of conditions such as inflammatory bowel disease, obscure GI bleeding and some GI cancers.

The introduction of efficient in-house physiological testing has significantly reduced patient waiting time for these procedures from up to 9 months, to within 4 weeks.

3.5.2.3. Acute Medical Unit (AMU)

The Acute Medical Unit is a dedicated care unit that provides assessment and treatment for adult patients with medical conditions when they are first admitted to hospital. This year the assessment area within the Acute Medical Unit has further enhanced the facilities to provide a better patient experience. The assessment area has developed a very successful new 'pull' model that now assesses adult medical patients referred via both the Emergency Department as well as primary care. The AMU has shown significant improvements in the national Society for Acute Medicine benchmarking audit in 2018. The new model has reduced the number of medical patients waiting for a bed in the Emergency Department, decreased the length of stay on the unit, increased the proportion of discharges, as well as shown a reduction in crude mortality. The Acute Medical Unit has purchased a ward-based drug dispensing machine, Omnicell, that has enabled on ward dispensing and significant improvement to turnaround times for discharge medication provision.

3.5.2.4. Diabetes

Last year, the Diabetes Team were successful in winning a bid for transformation funding from NHS England, which continues to be invested in the following:

- Inpatient diabetes specialist care provided seven days a week, focussing on key areas such as reducing emergency admissions in people with diabetes, driving up the quality of diabetes care across the Trust and reducing length of stay
 - Improved foot service with increased capacity in the diabetes foot clinics to support a reduction in outpatient waits for assessment, with an anticipated reduction in risk around the deterioration of foot conditions
 - The Specialist Diabetes Team has improved the structured education programme for people with type 2 diabetes, delivering evening and weekend education sessions
 - The 'Cloud' service is improving collaborative working between primary and secondary care, which includes a telephone line for specialist advice for professionals, patients and carers for diabetes advice and support
 - The Diabetes Team have been involved in a National Adult Diabetes Inpatient Audit (NADIA) collaborative project with pharmacy looking to reduce a number of indicators relating to medication errors and inpatient hypoglycaemia and diabetic ketoacidosis. This work was highly commended and is due to be presented at the annual Diabetes UK (DUK) conference. It has led to a number of initiatives including a change in the way that we deliver diabetes inpatient education for staff including simulation-based model teaching sessions
- call; Phase 2 commenced in April 2019, with all strokes from Mid-Mersey attending Whiston
- Increased access to thrombectomy
 - Established innovative and award-winning telemedicine service for six month stroke reviews, which has been piloted for therapy environmental visits to determine if more efficient care can be provided
 - Established a stroke prevention and education role to optimise the care of patients with asymptomatic, known atrial fibrillation to ensure they receive anticoagulation if appropriate. Atrial fibrillation is a leading cause of large strokes and subsequently death on the Stroke Unit. The goal for 2019-20 will be to influence the long-term management of at least 50 patients, leading to the prevention of one death and one patient from requiring institutional care
 - Development of a Hyper Acute Stroke Unit (HASU)-based orthoptics service. This provides vital assessment of eye function following stroke, which helps guide the therapy teams and clinicians regarding the impact of stroke upon visual impairment; and/or the impact of existing visual impairments upon stroke. This has been a major piece of quality improvement, which was presented by the Lead Consultant as an exemplar of national good practice at the UK Stroke Forum and was extremely well-received. This model of care is now being adopted by a number of other centres

3.5.2.5. Stroke

The following developments have been delivered or continued in 2018-19:

- Phase 1 of the stroke reconfiguration delivered, with all strokes across Mid-Mersey onset within 4 hours attending Whiston as the first port of

3.5.2.6. Liver Nurses

The Trust has a dedicated team of nurses and two healthcare assistants who are trained to undertake FibroScans (non-invasive assessments of the extent of liver fibrosis (scarring)), which releases the Liver Nurses to do more complex work. The service has procured a new portable device to offer this service at our St Helens site, with plans to roll this out into the community in the future.

3.5.3. Primary and Community Care Group

The Trust has established a Primary and Community Care Group following the recent acquisition of various community and primary care services to ensure their effective delivery and to maintain high quality patient care out of hospital. This will in turn reduce the demand on the hospital-based services and ensure patients receive the right care, in the right place at the right time.

The Care Group has senior clinical leadership included in the management structure to ensure consistent, high quality clinical practice is delivered across community and primary care services.

3.5.4. Clinical Support Services Care Group

3.5.4.1. Therapy Services

Therapy Services constantly strive to improve services offered to patients to promote independence and support safe discharge from hospital. The Trust delivers an in-service training programme for all grades of therapists to support knowledge and skill development and promote evidence-based practice. There have been many initiatives and developments throughout the year, including:

Speech and Language Therapists:

- Implemented an International Dysphagia Descriptor Standardisation Initiative (IDDSI) to improve the safety of patients with eating, drinking and swallowing disorders
- Introduced e-referral pathway for inpatients, which has improved the governance of patient data and reduced delays in assessment

- Introduced e-triage for outpatient referrals to allow quicker triaging and reducing delays in appointments being offered

Trauma & Orthopaedics Therapy Team:

- Trialled early supported discharge for patients with fractured neck of femur, who can be supported at home, reducing their length of stay and promoting independence at home. Early results are good and the service is looking at ways to fully introduce this initiative

Medicine for Older People (MOP) Therapy Team:

- Parkinsons Disease Group has moved from an 8 week to a 12 week programme, incorporating a more graded programme of exercises and more structured external speakers, following feedback in a patient survey

Dietetics Service:

- Produced nutrition newsletters to be displayed on Trust intranet, highlighting health promotion events and 'hot topics'

Critical Care & Surgery Therapy Team:

- Developed a therapy communication board that will go behind the patients' beds on Critical Care to document therapy input with the patient, for example, how they transfer/mobilise, what diet they are having and speech and language recommendations

3.5.4.2. Prostate Cancer Pathway

The Prostate Timed Pathway Working Group has implemented changes to the prostate cancer pathway that have reduced the time from referral to diagnosis by an average of 12 days. This has been achieved by increasing prostate biopsy capacity, introducing rapid access magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) slots and collaborative working with radiology and pathology departments to reduce reporting times.

3.5.4.3. Cancer Services

There have been a number of developments within our cancer services during 2018-2019 and these are summarised below:

- First Advanced Nurse Practitioner (ANP) in Oncology to be based within a chemotherapy unit. This has had a positive impact on both patient experience and clinical management of patients with complications of chemotherapy. The role has reduced the number patients referred to the Emergency Department and enabled patients to be managed in an ambulatory setting and, importantly, to stay in their own homes and continue with their treatment. Given the success of the post, a second ANP was appointed in the Autumn
- The Trust was successful in a bid to Macmillan to review current pathways of care for upper gastrointestinal cancers. This group of patients have to travel to various trusts for consultations and treatment and often struggle with complications of their cancer. The innovative project aims to design a pathway that enables patients to have reduced numbers of hospital attendances and receive the care they need locally. The project is led by a member of our Upper Gastrointestinal Macmillan Cancer nursing team and includes input from dietetics
- The Trust has successfully implemented virtual working for patients referred with a suspicion of cancer by their GP or who attend for a chest X-ray and require further investigation. The service started in September 2018 and has already positively impacted on multidisciplinary team (MDT) working and patient pathways. The project is led by a Respiratory Consultant and the lung cancer MDT
- The Trust was successful in a bid with Cheshire and Merseyside Cancer Alliance to participate in a workforce project involving cancer navigators. The navigators co-ordinate the pathway of patients referred on a two-week wait (2WW) pathway to the colorectal and lung cancer teams. The impact of the roles has already demonstrated a reduction in appointment attendances and streamlined the patient experience. A third navigator has since been appointed to the acute oncology vague symptom team.

3.6. Summary of national patient surveys

The full results for all the Care Quality Commission's national patient surveys can be found on their website at <http://www.cqc.org.uk/>

3.6.1. National Inpatient Survey

The Trust participated in the annual National Inpatient Survey 2017 coordinated by the Care Quality Commission. The results were published in June 2018 and the Trust's response rate was 36% compared to the national response rate of 41%.

The Trust was included in the best performing trusts nationally for the following indicators and was rated about the same as other trusts for the remaining indicators:

- Noise from other patients – not being bothered by noise at night from other patients (7.3/10)
- Cleanliness of rooms or wards – (9.6/10)
- Choice of food – having been offered a choice of food (9.6/10)
- Privacy for discussions – for being given enough privacy when discussing their condition or treatment (9.1/10)

The Trust is taking a number of actions to improve patient care including:

- Enhancing the discharge process
- Improving the quality of written information provided to patients
- Reiterating the importance of staff introducing themselves
- Working with volunteers to support patient mealtimes

3.6.2. National Emergency Department Survey

The Care Quality Commission published the results of the 2016 Emergency Department Survey in October 2017. The national response rate was 26% and the Trust's response rate was 23%.

The Trust was rated better than other trusts in the following two areas:

- Being given the right amount of information about their condition or treatment
- Those prescribed new medication, being told about possible side effects

The Trust was rated as about the same as other trusts for all other areas, with no scores rated lower. The following actions have been taken to improve the services we provide:

- Ongoing provision of information about waiting times for patients to be examined, which will be further developed by the installation of TV screens in the new extension opened in February 2019
- An extension to the previous building has been completed, which has increased the availability of cubicles within the main department. There is also a new reception area and triage room
- Provision of a water fountain in the waiting room, accessible for both patients and relatives
- Introduced new ways of working to allow an earlier first point of contact to reduce the time waiting to be examined and assessed. A doctor is identified every shift to be available to assess patients in various clinical areas (triage/stretch triage/paediatric unit)
- A doctor is identified per shift to be the "Emergency Response" doctor who will be called for and will attend to any patient within the department who triggers an alert via the national early warning score (NEWS), thus reducing any delays for reviews and treatments

- Increased training and development for nursing staff and implementation of patient group directives to allow nursing staff to provide simple pain relief prior to patients being seen by medical staff remains ongoing

3.6.3. National Children and Young People Survey

The Care Quality Commission published the results of the 2016 Children and Young People Survey in November 2017. The national response rate was 26% and the Trust's response rate was 15%.

For the experiences of children aged 8-15 years, the Trust scored 'much better than expected' and was one of only five trusts in the country to achieve this maximum score. The Trust scored about the same as others for children aged 0-7 years.

There were 15 areas in which the Trust was rated better than other trusts including:

- Children and young people feeling they had enough privacy during their care and treatment
- Children and young people saying staff spoke with them about how they were going to care for them
- Children and young people saying they were able to ask staff questions
- Children and young people saying that hospital staff spoke with them when they were worried
- Parents and carers saying they had confidence and trust in staff treating their child
- Parents and carers saying they received enough information about their child's new medication
- Children and young people saying they were told who to contact if they were worried about anything when they got home
- Children and young people saying they were told what would happen next after they left hospital

The Trust was rated about the same as other trusts for all other scores, with no lower scores.

An action plan is in place to continue to improve the services provided to children and young people, with a number of changes implemented, including:

- Increased awareness of play facilities available to babies, children and young people
- Ensuring consistency of communication regarding care plans with parents, carers and patients to avoid any conflicting information being given
- Improving food satisfaction rates for children in the 0-7 years age group
- Improved communication for surgical patients before and after an operation or procedure

3.6.4. National Maternity Survey

The Care Quality Commission published the results of the 2018 Maternity Survey in January 2019. The national response rate was 37% and St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust's response rate was 27%, compared to 21% the previous year.

The survey provides information on women's experiences during all aspects of their maternity care, including antenatal care, postnatal care, the care received during labour and birth. The Trust was rated about the same as other trusts for all of the indicators.

An action plan has been developed with particular focus on the other areas where improvements can be made, including:

- ensuring women know they can choose which maternity provider and professional will be in charge of their care
- reviewing the reasons why women experienced a delay in their discharge after the birth

The Continuity of Carer pathway for Midwife-Led Care has commenced across the Community Teams. A woman will receive joined up care between a small community midwifery team and the midwives on the Midwife-Led Unit (MLU) throughout her pregnancy, birth and post-natal period. Community midwives will be able to attend the MLU and provide some aspect of care for their own women when they are in labour. Approximately 18% of all births occur on the well-established MLU currently.

3.6.5. National cancer patient experience survey (NCPES)

Patient comment

From seeing my GP to my OPD with the consultant and ongoing surgery and treatment, all staff (from consultant to ancillary staff) were excellent. All were knowledgeable and caring in their roles and had a caring manner. I was treated with care and speed. My disabled husband needs a wheelchair and was allowed to visit outside of visiting hours, which made parking easier.

The NHS England National Cancer Patient Experience Survey (NCPES) is designed to monitor national progress on cancer care, to drive forward quality improvement and to inform the work of groups supporting patients. The survey was developed and has been run by Quality Health for the Department of Health since 2010. It is the largest and most comprehensive survey of cancer patients in the world.

Patients treated for cancer within the Trust have rated the level of care they received, scoring their overall care as 8.9 out of 10, placing the Trust above the national average rating of 8.8.

In the 2017 NCPES patients placed the Trust as best across the Cheshire and Merseyside Cancer Alliance for :

- Providing patients with details of support groups (89%)
- Access to information about chemotherapy treatment (87%)
- Access to information about chemotherapy working (81%)
- Access to information on financial help (75%)
- Access to information on free prescription (85%)

The Trust was amongst the highest scoring trusts in Cheshire and Merseyside Cancer Alliance for:

- Patients having the name of a Clinical Nurse Specialist (93%)
- Seen as soon as necessary by GP (89%)
- Staff doing everything to control the pain (85%)
- Staff asking for the patient's preferred name (59%)
- Patients felt able to discuss fears with staff as inpatient (59%)

The Trust was above the expected range for:

- Patients being seen as soon as necessary (89%)
- Hospital staff giving information on getting financial help (75%)
- Patients given understandable information about if chemotherapy is working (81%)

A number of developments have been made to address areas highlighted by the survey, including:

- Standardised written information on discharge from inpatient stay in breast services
- Awareness raised with clinical staff on managing patient flows through breast clinic appointments, including start times and delays undertaken
- Patient information packs introduced at diagnosis for colorectal cancer patients
- Trust invitation letter amended advising patients that they may receive results of tests and can bring a relative to support them in urology and endoscopy
- Colorectal Clinical Nurse Specialist (CNS) attends ward board round and is involved in care of suspected cancer patients admitted as emergency
- Ward teams updated on behavioural standards and introduction of senior nurse ward round
- Bowel school includes health and social needs assessment, which is shared with ward team
- End of treatment summary template agreed by gynaecology, urology and breast and rolled out November 2018
- Increased number of patients have a holistic needs assessment (HNA) and care plan across all cancer sites (monitored as part of NHS England targets)
- Named trials champion in each MDT who works with trials team
- Support worker in skin and haematology services checks that patients know the name of their CNS during the information ward round
- Skin cancer patients offered opportunity to discuss concerns with Consultant, documented in ward round book or in communication sheet within nursing records
- Matrons and CNS actively promote "My name is..."

- End of treatment support and information on side effects facilitated at the Cancer Health and wellbeing events (monitored as part of NHS England targets)
- Advance care planning and advanced communication skills training added on compliance matrix for CNS
- Patient experience working group established
- World café event for upper gastrointestinal cancer patients and carers
- Introduced FFT to nurse-led cancer clinics to provide more immediate feedback
- Cancer teams engaged in practice nurse education events facilitated by the Cancer Alliance
- Appointment of a benefits advisor has been instrumental in the Trust being number one in the Cancer Alliance for benefits advice

The Trust continues to strive towards improving patient experience and a comprehensive action plan has been put into place by the clinical teams to address any issues raised where the scores were below average for individual tumour sites.

The full report can be found at <http://www.ncpes.co.uk>

Section 4

Annex

4.1. Statement of Directors' responsibilities in respect of the Quality Account

The Trust Board of Directors is required under the Health Act 2009 and the National Health Service (Quality Accounts) Regulations 2010 (as amended by the National Health Service (Quality Accounts) Amendment Regulations 2012) to prepare a Quality Account for each financial year.

The Department of Health issues guidance on the form and content of the annual Quality Account, which has been included in this Quality Account.

In preparing the Quality Account, Directors are required to take steps to satisfy themselves that:

- The Quality Account presents a balanced picture of the Trust's performance over the period covered 2018-19
- The performance information reported in the Quality Account is reliable and accurate
- There are proper internal controls over the collection and reporting of the measures of performance included in the Quality Account and these controls are subject to review to confirm that they are working effectively in practice
- The data underpinning the measures of performance reported in the Quality Account is robust and reliable, conforms to specified data quality standards and prescribed definitions and is subject to appropriate scrutiny and review
- The Quality Account has been prepared in accordance with Department of Health guidance.

The Trust Board of Directors confirm to the best of their knowledge and belief that they have complied with the above requirements in preparing the Quality Account.

By order of the Trust Board



Richard Fraser
Chairman



Ann Marr
Chief Executive

4.2. Written statements by other bodies

4.2.1. Halton Borough Council

Quality Accounts 2018 - 2019

Further the Joint Quality Accounts event held on 10th May 2019 that your colleague Sue Redfern attended to present a summary of your Quality Accounts, I am writing with the Health Policy and Performance Board comments. The Health Policy and Performance Board particularly noted the following key areas:

During the year 2018/19, the Board were pleased to note that St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust (SHKTH) made progress against the following areas:

- Best acute trust in the NHS for the third consecutive year with outstanding results, published in March 2019, with the Trust rated as the best place to work and receive treatment in the NHS;
- Best acute trust nationally for the second year running in 2018 for the Patient Led Assessments of the Care Environment (PLACE); and
- Maintained and improved quality indicators, including: 99.1% harm free care; no grade 3 or 4 pressure ulcers; and reduced number of harms from falls.

The Board were particularly pleased to hear about the CQC rating of Outstanding which is a great achievement and one you and your staff should be proud of.

During her presentation, Sue talked about the nurses that have been brought over from India and the Board were really pleased to hear the support that these nurses have received in settling in to their new environment and communities, and the fact that all 57 have remained at Whiston Hospital and are encouraging other nurses to join them. It is refreshing to hear of innovative solutions to workforce challenges.

The Board are pleased to note the following Improvement Priorities for 2019 – 2020 and look forward to hearing about progress on these next year:

- **Safety** - Ensure timely and effective assessment and delivery of care within the Emergency Department;
- **Effectiveness** - Maximise the effectiveness and utilisation of new electronic systems to improve the timeliness and effectiveness of patient care; and
- **Patient Experience** - Increase the proportion of patients who report that they have received an appropriate amount of information to meet their needs in a way they can understand.

The Board would like to thank STHK for the opportunity to comment on these Quality Accounts.

Yours sincerely,

Councillor Joan Lowe

Chair, Health Policy and Performance Board

4.2.2. Warrington Clinical Commissioning Group and Halton Clinical Commissioning Group

Re: Quality Accounts 2018 – 2019

I am writing to express my thanks for the submission of St Helens & Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust Quality Report for 2018-2019 and for the presentation given by Sue Redfern Chief Nurse to local stakeholders on 10th May 2019. This letter provides the response from both NHS Halton and NHS Warrington Clinical Commissioning Groups to the Quality Account Report 2018-2019.

NHS Halton and NHS Warrington CCGs understand the pressures and challenges for the Trust and the local health economy in the last year and would like to congratulate and thank the Trust for the level of partnership working and support in this year.

NHS Halton & NHS Warrington CCGs noted the Priorities and progress made in 2018 – 2019:

Patient Safety

- Maintained and improved quality indicators
- Delivered 99.1% harm free care
- No grade 3 or 4 pressure ulcers
- Reduced number of harms from falls
- Clostridium difficile infections significantly below threshold
- One never event and one MRSA contaminant to which the Trust have acknowledged their disappointment.

Clinical Effectiveness

- Achieved over 90% target for responding to complaints in timescale agreed - 92.1%
- Maintained effective assessment and monitoring of all patients in the A&E Department.
- Reduced the rate of avoidable harm from falls pressure ulcers and medication incidents
- Implemented change as a result of lessons learned from incidents and complaints
- Increased the percentage of e-discharge summaries sent with 24 hours from 69.5% 2017-18 to 71.3% 2018-19.
- Improved effectiveness of discharge planning

Patient Experience

Best acute trust nationally for the second year running in 2018 for the Patient Led Assessments of the Care Environment (PLACE) with top marks in the country for:

- Cleanliness
- Food
- Privacy and dignity
- Facilities for patients living with dementia and disabilities
- Condition, appearance and maintenance of the hospital buildings

Workforce

- Extremely positive staff survey results
- Best acute trust in the NHS for the third consecutive year with outstanding results, published in March 2019, with the Trust rated as the best place to work and receive treatment in the NHS
- Recognised, for the third year running, as being the top acute Trust nationally for staff engagement, staff motivation and pride in the quality of care provided to patients with highest marks in the following areas
 - Positive organisational culture of safety
 - Quality of care
 - Staff engagement
 - Staff morale
 - Equality, diversity & inclusion
 - Providing a safe environment for staff
 - 1st nationally for flu vaccination of frontline staff, achieving 95.4%
 - Implemented an electronic system (SafeCare) to ensure optimal deployment of nursing resources

Stakeholders acknowledged and expressed their congratulations on the Trust receiving an Outstanding rating awarded by the Care Quality Commission (CQC) and commend staff for all the hard work and dedication in achieving this.

NHS Halton & NHS Warrington CCGs noted the Trusts Improvement Priorities for 2019 – 2020:

Priority 1 – Patient Safety

Ensure timely and effective assessment and delivery of care within the A&E Department.

- Patients triaged within 15 minutes of arrival
- First clinical assessment median time of <2 hours over each 24 hour period
- Compliance with the Trust's Policy for National Early Warning Score (NEWS), with appropriate escalation of patients who trigger
- 100% compliance with sepsis screening and treatment guidance

Priority 2 – Clinical Effectiveness

Maximise the effectiveness and utilisation of new electronic systems to improve the timeliness and effectiveness of patient care

- Reduction in medication errors
- Improved discharge
- Improved communications with GPs and community services
- Earlier identification and initiation to treatment for deteriorating patients
- Reduction in overall length of stay for patients

Priority 3 – Patient Experience

Increase the proportion of patients who report that they have received an appropriate amount of information to meet their needs in a way they can understand

- Improved scores for responses to patient questionnaires for questions relating to receiving the right level of information

Stakeholders noted the report on progress against the 7 Day Service Standards and on the work the Trust is undertaking in regards to Freedom to Speak up and supporting staff to raise concerns.

NHS Halton & Warrington CCGs recognise the challenges for providers in the coming year and we look forward to working with the Trust during 2019-2020 to deliver continued improvement in service quality, safety and patient experience and also on strengthening integrated partnership working to deliver the greatest and fastest possible improvement in people's health and wellbeing by creating a strong, safe and sustainable health and care system that is fit for the future.

We would like to congratulate the trust on the hard work of its staff and their commitment to the care of the people of Halton and Warrington, thanking local staff and managers for their on-going commitment locally and for the opportunity to comment on the draft Quality Account for 2018/2019.

Yours sincerely,

A handwritten signature in black ink that reads "Michelle Creed". The signature is written in a cursive, flowing style.

Michelle Creed
Chief Nurse

Cc
Sue Redfern
Dr Andrew Davies

4.2.3. Knowsley Clinical Commissioning Group and St Helens Clinical Commissioning Group

NHS St Helens Clinical Commissioning Group and NHS Knowsley Clinical Commissioning Group thank you for the opportunity to comment on the St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust Quality Account for 2018/19.

The CCGs commend the Trust on its achievements in 2018/19 including:

- a) 99.1% new harm-free care, an increase from 98.9% in 2017/18.
- b) No grade 3 or 4 pressure ulcers for the second year running.
- c) Best acute Trust nationally for the second year running in 2018 for the Patient Led Assessments of the Care Environment (PLACE).
- d) 1st Nationally for flu vaccination of frontline staff, achieving 95.4% compared to 87% in 2017/18.
- e) Winning the ISO Network innovation award for Improving Patient Outcomes & Efficiency with TeleHealth.
- f) Rated as the best place to work and receive treatment in the NHS in the National staff survey results published in March 2019.

This account highlights the priorities identified in 2018/19 and provides a clear review of outcomes demonstrating how well the Trust did in achieving those priorities to deliver high quality care to patients. The Quality Account would however benefit if the full range of services provided by the Trust were included, for example, Community Provisions.

Commissioners note the Quality priorities for improvement for 2019/20 as:

- | | |
|---------------------|---|
| Safety: | Ensure timely and effective assessment and delivery of care within the Emergency Department. |
| Effectiveness: | Maximise the effectiveness and utilisation of new electronic systems to improve the timeliness and effectiveness of patient care. |
| Patient Experience: | Increase the proportion of patients who report that they have received an appropriate amount of information to meet their needs in a way they can understand. |

The Care Quality Commission (CQC) rating of outstanding from the latest report (March 2019) is to be commended and Commissioners acknowledge and recognise the work undertaken by the Trust to achieve this.

The CCGs acknowledge the update in progress in implementing the priority clinical standards for seven day hospital services and the provision of details of ways in which staff can speak up (including how feedback is given to those who speak up).

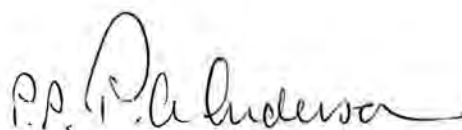
NHS St Helens Clinical Commissioning Group and NHS Knowsley Clinical Commissioning Group and will continue to monitor St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust through the Clinical Quality and Performance Group meetings to gain assurance that the quality and safety of services delivered to patients continues to improve and that effective governance processes are in place and embedded throughout the organisation.

Yours sincerely



LISA ELLIS

CHIEF NURSE/DIRECTOR OF QUALITY
NHS ST HELENS
CLINICAL COMMISSIONING GROUP



DIANNE JOHNSON

CHIEF EXECUTIVE
NHS KNOWSLEY CLINICAL COMMISSIONING GROUP
DIANNE JOHNSON CHIEF EXECUTIVE

4.2.4. Healthwatch Halton

Re: Quality Account 2018-2019

We welcome this opportunity to provide a commentary on St Helens & Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust Quality Account for 2018-2019.

The Trust is to be congratulated on a very comprehensive report which gives a clear overview of the work carried out by the Trust to improve the quality of its services.

In reviewing the Quality Account, we considered the following questions:

- Does the draft Quality Account reflect people's real experiences as told to local Healthwatch by service users and their families and carers over the past year?
- From what people have told Healthwatch Halton, is there evidence that any of the basic things are not being done well by the provider?
- Is it clear from the draft Quality Account that there is a learning culture within the Trust that allows people's real experiences to be captured and used to enable the provider to get better at what it does year on year?
- Are the priorities for improvement as set out in the draft Quality Account challenging enough to drive improvement and it is clear how improvement has been measured in the past and how it will be measured in the future?

Overall, we believe the Quality Account reflects accurately people's real experiences of using the service. Feedback collected during our outreach sessions at Whiston Hospital has highlighted many positive aspects of the care and treatment provided by the Trust.

We thought the report clear and informative. We appreciated the inclusion of the 'summary of quality achievements' in Section 1 highlighting much of the excellent work taking place within the Trust.

The report also details well the progress made against the 2018 - 2019 priorities, listing which priorities had been met and how, as well giving examples of the work being carried out to achieve the yet unmet priorities.

We are pleased to note the 3 quality priorities for improvement for 2019-2020; Safety, Effectiveness and Patient Experience.

- Safety - Ensure timely and effective assessment and delivery of care within the Emergency Department.

- Effectiveness - Maximise the effectiveness and utilisation of new electronic systems to improve the timeliness and effectiveness of patient care.
- Patient Experience - Increase the proportion of patients who report that they have received an appropriate amount of information to meet their needs in a way they can understand.

It was also positive to see that the views of stakeholders, including Healthwatch, and staff were considered prior to the Trust Board's approval of the final list.

The Quality Account gives clear information on how improvement progress on the 3 areas will be measured. We look forward to seeing improvements on these areas during the coming year.

Our involvement with the Trust during the past year has included:

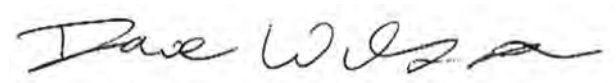
- Membership on the Trust's Patient Experience Council
- Quarterly meetings between the Trust and Healthwatch
- Monthly outreach sessions

We've always found the Trust willing to listen to and work closely with Healthwatch to address priorities identified by patients, such as improving discharge planning.

During the next 12 months we will continue to offer challenge to the Trust on key priorities and work with it wherever we can to help improve the experience of patients who use the service. With regards to improving Patient Experience, we would welcome the opportunity to work closely with the Trust on this priority area.

Healthwatch Halton would like to congratulate the Trust on the hard work of all its staff and their dedication and commitment to the care of our local community.

Kind regards



Dave Wilson

Manager - Healthwatch Halton

4.2.5. Healthwatch Knowsley

Commentary on the Quality Account for St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust by Healthwatch Knowsley.

Healthwatch Knowsley welcomes the opportunity to provide this commentary in support of the St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust Quality Account for 2019/20. A draft copy of the Account was provided to Healthwatch Knowsley in a timely manner to allow for a response to be produced.

Healthwatch Knowsley would like to thank the Trust for the willingness to work with Healthwatch across the year, including the opportunity to meet with the Trust on quarterly basis to raise any issues and trends that are emerging regarding services. In addition to this Healthwatch Knowsley attends and reports to the Patient Safety and Patient Experience Councils on a monthly basis. This collaborative working has been a consistent theme over many years now and is very much appreciated.

The opportunity to be able to contribute to the positive shaping of priorities as part of the Quality Account process is welcomed and levels of transparency and honest dialogue provides scope for meaningful engagement as well as the positive work around key areas such as pressure ulcers and falls.

Overall the Trust currently holds a patient experience rating of 4.1 out of 5 stars (good/excellent) based on the 446 reviews held on the Healthwatch Knowsley online feedback centre. This rating has been collated through feedback provided by patients and family members. Listening Events and information stands at which we have spoken to patients and family members have also contributed to this rating. The Trust has proactively supported this work.

Healthwatch Knowsley members received a presentation of the Quality Account Report and fed back that they had found the session to be really enjoyable and informative. The positive progress against the previous year's priorities was welcomed and the group members felt that the priorities for the coming year are appropriate.

Healthwatch Knowsley would be keen to see the Trust continuing to look to address the key themes that are reported through patient experience information.

Finally, Healthwatch Knowsley would like to congratulate the trust on their "Outstanding" CQC inspection and wishes to place on record their appreciation of the Trust's work on behalf of our local community.

4.2.6. Healthwatch St Helens

Upon distribution amongst our Forum, the Quality Account Report received positive feedback.

‘It is obvious that everything this Quality Account demonstrates that it is geared up towards delivering the best care for patients and families. In these testing financial times it is encouraging to see that every effort is being made to build upon last years’ strengths and success. Healthwatch St Helens are confident that the Trust will continue to provide a high quality service and are responsive in identifying areas for improvement.’

This reflects the views from our Forum.

Kind regards

Gail Hughes

Communications and Engagement Officer
Healthwatch

4.2.7. Independent Auditor



Independent Practitioner's Limited Assurance Report to the Board of Directors of St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust on the Quality Account

We have been engaged by the Board of Directors of St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust to perform an independent assurance engagement in respect of St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust's Quality Account for the year ended 31 March 2019 ("the Quality Account") and certain performance indicators contained therein as part of our work. NHS Trusts are required by section 8 of the Health Act 2009 to publish a Quality Account which must include prescribed information set out in The National Health Service (Quality Account) Regulations 2010 and as subsequently amended in 2011, 2012, 2017 and 2018 ("the Regulations").

Scope and subject matter

The indicators for the year ended 31 March 2019 subject to the limited assurance engagement consist of the following indicators:

- VTE assessments: % of patients risk-assessed for venous thromboembolism (VTE)
- Patient Safety Indicator: % of patients safety incidents resulting in severe death or harm We refer to these two indicators collectively as "the indicators".

Respective responsibilities of the Directors and Practitioner

The Directors are required under the Health Act 2009 to prepare a Quality Account for each financial year. The Department of Health and NHS Improvement has issued guidance on the form and content of annual Quality Accounts (which incorporates the legal requirements in the Health Act 2009 and the Regulations).

In preparing the Quality Account, the Directors are required to take steps to satisfy themselves that:

- the Quality Account presents a balanced picture of the Trust's performance over the period covered;
- the performance information reported in the Quality Account is reliable and accurate;
- there are proper internal controls over the collection and reporting of the measures of performance included in the Quality Account, and these controls are subject to review to confirm that they are working effectively in practice;
- the data underpinning the measures of performance reported in the Quality Account is robust and reliable, conforms to specified data quality standards and prescribed definitions, and is subject to appropriate scrutiny and review; and
- the Quality Account has been prepared in accordance with Department of Health and NHS Improvement guidance.

The Directors are required to confirm compliance with these requirements in a Statement of Directors' Responsibilities within the Quality Account.

Our responsibility is to form a conclusion, based on limited assurance procedures, on whether anything has come to our attention that causes us to believe that:

- the Quality Account is not prepared in all material respects in line with the criteria set out in the Regulations;
- the Quality Account is not consistent in all material respects with the sources specified in the NHS Quality Accounts Auditor Guidance 2014-15 issued by the Department of Health in March 2015 ("the Guidance"); and
- the indicators in the Quality Account identified as having been the subject of limited assurance in the Quality Account are not reasonably stated in all material respects in accordance with the Regulations and the six dimensions of data quality set out in the Guidance.

We read the Quality Account and conclude whether it is consistent with the requirements of the Regulations and consider the implications for our report if we become aware of any material omissions.

We read the other information contained in the Quality Account and consider whether it is materially inconsistent with:

- Board minutes for the period 1 April 2018 to 24 May 2019;
- papers relating to quality reported to the Board over the period 1 April 2018 to 24 May 2019;
- feedback from commissioners;
- feedback from local Healthwatch organisations;
- feedback from the Overview and Scrutiny Committee;
- feedback from other named stakeholder(s) involved in the sign off of the Quality Account;
- the Trust's complaints report published under regulation 18 of the Local Authority, Social Services and National Health Service Complaints (England) Regulations 2009;
- the national patient and staff survey;
- the Head of Internal Audit's annual opinion over the Trust's control environment dated April 2019;
- the Annual Governance Statement dated May 2019; and
- the Care Quality Commission's inspection report dated March 2019.

We consider the implications for our report if we become aware of any apparent misstatements or material inconsistencies with these documents (collectively the "documents"). Our responsibilities do not extend to any other information.

We are in compliance with the applicable independence and competency requirements of the Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales (ICAEW) Code of Ethics. Our team comprised assurance practitioners and relevant subject matter experts.

This report, including the conclusion, has been prepared solely for the Board of Directors of NHS Trust. We permit the disclosure of this report to enable the Board of Directors to demonstrate that they have discharged their governance responsibilities by commissioning an independent assurance report in connection with the indicators. To the fullest extent permissible by law, we do not accept or assume responsibility to anyone other than the Board of Directors as a body and St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust for our work or this report, except where terms are expressly agreed and with our prior consent in writing.

Assurance work performed

We conducted this limited assurance engagement under the terms of the Guidance. Our limited assurance procedures included:

- evaluating the design and implementation of the key processes and controls for managing and reporting the indicators;
- making enquiries of management;
- limited testing, on a selective basis, of the data used to calculate the indicators tested against supporting documentation;
- comparing the content of the Quality Account to the requirements of the Regulations; and
- reading the documents.

A limited assurance engagement is narrower in scope than a reasonable assurance engagement. The nature, timing and extent of procedures for gathering sufficient appropriate evidence are deliberately limited relative to a reasonable assurance engagement.

Limitations

Non-financial performance information is subject to more inherent limitations than financial information, given the characteristics of the subject matter and the methods used for determining such information.

The absence of a significant body of established practice on which to draw allows for the selection of different but acceptable measurement techniques that can result in materially different measurements and can affect comparability. The precision of different measurement techniques may also vary.

Furthermore, the nature and methods used to determine such information, as well as the measurement criteria and the precision of these criteria, may change over time. It is important to read the Quality Account in the context of the criteria set out in the Regulations.

The nature, form and content required of Quality Accounts are determined by the Department of Health and NHS Improvement. This may result in the omission of information relevant to other users, for example for the purpose of comparing the results of different NHS organisations.

In addition, the scope of our limited assurance work has not included governance over quality or non-mandated indicators which have been determined locally by St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust.

Our audit work on the financial statements of St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust is carried out in accordance with our statutory obligations and is subject to separate terms and conditions. This engagement will not be treated as having any effect on our separate duties and responsibilities as St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust's external auditors. Our audit reports on the financial statements are made solely to St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust's directors, as a body, in accordance with the Local Audit and Accountability Act 2014. Our audit work is undertaken so that we might state to St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust's directors those matters we are required to state to them in an auditor's report and for no other purpose. Our audits of St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust's financial statements are not planned or conducted to address or reflect matters in which anyone other than such directors as a body may be interested for such purpose. In these circumstances, to the fullest extent permitted by law, we do not accept or assume any responsibility to anyone other than St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust and St Helens and Knowsley Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust's directors as a body, for our audit work, for our audit reports, or for the opinions we have formed in respect of those audits.

Conclusion

Based on the results of our procedures, as described in this report, nothing has come to our attention that causes us to believe that, for the year ended 31 March 2019:

- the Quality Account is not prepared in all material respects in line with the criteria set out in the Regulations;
- the Quality Account is not consistent in all material respects with the sources specified in the Guidance; and
- the indicators in the Quality Account identified as having been subject to limited assurance have not been reasonably stated in all material respects in accordance with the Regulations and the six dimensions of data quality set out in the Guidance.

Grant Thornton UK LLP

Grant Thornton UK LLP
Chartered Accountants
4 Hardman Square
Spinningfields
Manchester, M3 3EB

24 May 2019

4.3. Amendments made to the Quality Account following feedback and written statements from other bodies

Section	Amendment
1.1	Total number of incidents included alongside percentage figures
2.1.1	Reference to never event expanded to include additional detail
2.1.1	Additional narrative added relating to the community services the Trust provides
3.3.8	Additional information relating to the roles of the volunteers



Section 5

Abbreviations

AHPs	Allied Health Professionals
AKI	Acute Kidney Injury
AMD	Age-related Macular Degeneration
AMU	Acute Medical Unit
ANTT	Aseptic Non-Touch Technique
BAPEN	British Association of Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition
BPH	Benign prostatic hyperplasia
BSI	Blood stream infection
BTS	British Thoracic Society
CCGs	Clinical Commissioning Groups
CHPPD	Care Hours per Patient per Day
CNS	Clinical Nurse Specialist
COPD	Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease
CPE	Carbapenemase-producing Enterobacteriaceae
CQC	Care Quality Commission
CQuIN	Commissioning for Quality and Innovation
CRAB	Copeland Risk Adjusted Barometer
CRN, NWC	Clinical Research Network, North West Coast
DATIX	Integrated Risk Management, Incident Reporting, Complaints Management System
DNACPR	Do not attempt cardiopulmonary resuscitation
ED	Emergency Department
EDS or EDS2	Equality Delivery System
ePMA	Electronic Prescribing and Medicine Administration
ePR	Electronic Prescribing Record
eTCP	Electronic Transfer of Care to Pharmacy
FFFAP	Falls and Fragility Fractures Audit Programme
FFT	Friends & Family Test
GI	Gastrointestinal
GNBSIs	Gram-negative bloodstream infections
GORD	Gastroesophageal reflux disease
GP	General Practitioner
HCAI	Healthcare associated infections
HF	Heart Failure
HNA	Holistic Needs Assessment
HSCIC	Health and Social Care Information Centre

HSMR	Hospital Standardised Mortality Ratio
HWWB	Health, Work and Well-being
IBD	Inflammatory Bowel Disease
ICNARC	Intensive Care National Audit & Research Centre
ICO	Information Commissioner's Office
IDDSI	International Dysphagia Descriptor Standardisation Initiative
IQILS	Improving quality in liver services
JAG	Joint Advisory Group
LARC	Long-acting reversible contraception
LGBT	Lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender
LGBTIQ	Lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, intersex and questioning
LSCB	Local Safeguarding Children Board
LUTS	Lower urinary tract symptoms
MARAC	Multi-Agency Risk Assessment Conferences
MBRRACE- UK	Mothers and Babies - Reducing Risk through Audits and Confidential Enquiries across the UK
MDT	Multi-disciplinary Team
MEWS	Modified Early Warning Score
MINAP	Myocardial Ischaemia National Audit Project
MLU	Midwife-led Unit
MOP	Medicine for Older People
MRI	Magnetic Resonance Imaging
MRSA	Methicillin-resistant staphylococcus aureus
MTI	Medical Training Initiative
NAOGC	National Audit Oesophago-Gastric Cancer
NBOCAP	National Bowel Cancer Audit Programme
NCAA	National Cardiac Arrest Audit
NCEPOD	National Confidential Enquiry into Patient Outcome and Death
NCPES	National Cancer Patient Experience Survey
NELA	National Emergency Laparotomy Audit
NEWS	National Early Warning Score
NG	Naso-gastric
NHSE	National Health Service England
NICE	National Institute for Health and Care Excellence
NIPE	Newborn and Infant Physical Examination
NIHR	National Institute for Health Research

NJ	Naso-jejunal
NJR	National Joint Registry
NLCA	National Lung Cancer Audit
NMC	Nursing and Midwifery Council
NNAP	National Neonatal Audit Programme
NPCA	National Prostate Cancer Audit
NPSA	National Patient Safety Agency
NRLS	National Reporting Learning System
ODPs	Operating Department Practitioners
PALS	Patient Advice and Liaison Service
PCNL	Percutaneous Nephrolithotomy
PE	Pulmonary Embolus
PEG	Percutaneous Endoscopic Gastrostomy
PFI	Private Finance Initiative
PLACE	Patient-Led Assessments of the Care Environment
PN	Parenteral Nutrition
PROMs	Patient Reported Outcome Measures
QCAT	Quality Care Accreditation Tool
QIP	Quality Improvement Project
RACPC	Rapid Access Chest Pain Clinic
RCA	Root Cause Analysis
RCEM	Royal College of Emergency Medicine
RN	Registered Nurse
SAMBA	Society for Acute Medicine (SAM) Benchmarking Audit
SEQOHS	Safe Effective Quality Occupational Health Services
SCR	Summary Care Record
SHMI	Summary Hospital-level Mortality Indicator
SIRO	Senior Information Risk Owner
SMR	Standardised Mortality Ratio
SSNAP	Sentinel Stroke National Audit Programme
STI	Sexually Transmitted Disease
STP	Sustainability and Transformation Plan
SUS	Secondary Uses Service
TARN	Trauma Audit & Research Network
TPN	Total Parenteral Nutrition
VTE	Venous Thromboembolism

